



## A propos de ce livre

Ceci est une copie numérique d'un ouvrage conservé depuis des générations dans les rayonnages d'une bibliothèque avant d'être numérisé avec précaution par Google dans le cadre d'un projet visant à permettre aux internautes de découvrir l'ensemble du patrimoine littéraire mondial en ligne.

Ce livre étant relativement ancien, il n'est plus protégé par la loi sur les droits d'auteur et appartient à présent au domaine public. L'expression "appartenir au domaine public" signifie que le livre en question n'a jamais été soumis aux droits d'auteur ou que ses droits légaux sont arrivés à expiration. Les conditions requises pour qu'un livre tombe dans le domaine public peuvent varier d'un pays à l'autre. Les livres libres de droit sont autant de liens avec le passé. Ils sont les témoins de la richesse de notre histoire, de notre patrimoine culturel et de la connaissance humaine et sont trop souvent difficilement accessibles au public.

Les notes de bas de page et autres annotations en marge du texte présentes dans le volume original sont reprises dans ce fichier, comme un souvenir du long chemin parcouru par l'ouvrage depuis la maison d'édition en passant par la bibliothèque pour finalement se retrouver entre vos mains.

## Consignes d'utilisation

Google est fier de travailler en partenariat avec des bibliothèques à la numérisation des ouvrages appartenant au domaine public et de les rendre ainsi accessibles à tous. Ces livres sont en effet la propriété de tous et de toutes et nous sommes tout simplement les gardiens de ce patrimoine. Il s'agit toutefois d'un projet coûteux. Par conséquent et en vue de poursuivre la diffusion de ces ressources inépuisables, nous avons pris les dispositions nécessaires afin de prévenir les éventuels abus auxquels pourraient se livrer des sites marchands tiers, notamment en instaurant des contraintes techniques relatives aux requêtes automatisées.

Nous vous demandons également de:

- + *Ne pas utiliser les fichiers à des fins commerciales* Nous avons conçu le programme Google Recherche de Livres à l'usage des particuliers. Nous vous demandons donc d'utiliser uniquement ces fichiers à des fins personnelles. Ils ne sauraient en effet être employés dans un quelconque but commercial.
- + *Ne pas procéder à des requêtes automatisées* N'envoyez aucune requête automatisée quelle qu'elle soit au système Google. Si vous effectuez des recherches concernant les logiciels de traduction, la reconnaissance optique de caractères ou tout autre domaine nécessitant de disposer d'importantes quantités de texte, n'hésitez pas à nous contacter. Nous encourageons pour la réalisation de ce type de travaux l'utilisation des ouvrages et documents appartenant au domaine public et serions heureux de vous être utile.
- + *Ne pas supprimer l'attribution* Le filigrane Google contenu dans chaque fichier est indispensable pour informer les internautes de notre projet et leur permettre d'accéder à davantage de documents par l'intermédiaire du Programme Google Recherche de Livres. Ne le supprimez en aucun cas.
- + *Rester dans la légalité* Quelle que soit l'utilisation que vous comptez faire des fichiers, n'oubliez pas qu'il est de votre responsabilité de veiller à respecter la loi. Si un ouvrage appartient au domaine public américain, n'en déduisez pas pour autant qu'il en va de même dans les autres pays. La durée légale des droits d'auteur d'un livre varie d'un pays à l'autre. Nous ne sommes donc pas en mesure de répertorier les ouvrages dont l'utilisation est autorisée et ceux dont elle ne l'est pas. Ne croyez pas que le simple fait d'afficher un livre sur Google Recherche de Livres signifie que celui-ci peut être utilisé de quelque façon que ce soit dans le monde entier. La condamnation à laquelle vous vous exposeriez en cas de violation des droits d'auteur peut être sévère.

## À propos du service Google Recherche de Livres

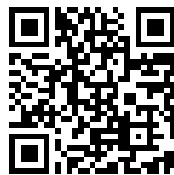
En favorisant la recherche et l'accès à un nombre croissant de livres disponibles dans de nombreuses langues, dont le français, Google souhaite contribuer à promouvoir la diversité culturelle grâce à Google Recherche de Livres. En effet, le Programme Google Recherche de Livres permet aux internautes de découvrir le patrimoine littéraire mondial, tout en aidant les auteurs et les éditeurs à élargir leur public. Vous pouvez effectuer des recherches en ligne dans le texte intégral de cet ouvrage à l'adresse <http://books.google.com>

---

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>

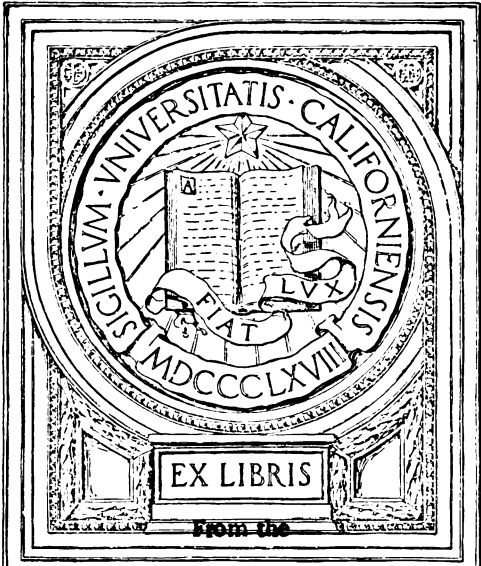




UR 12  
6-16612

130

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA  
MEDICAL CENTER LIBRARY  
SAN FRANCISCO



EX LIBRIS

From the

Margaret Schulze Memorial Fund

HISTORY COLLECTION

169/170

611477

277 (8) 113





CHILD-BIRTH,  
O R,  
**THE HAPPY  
DELIVERY OF  
WOMEN.**

Wherein is set downe the Government  
of W O M E N.

*Of their breeding Childre:  
Of their Travails, both Naturall and contrary  
to Nature: And  
Of their lying in.*

Together with the diseases, which happen to W O M E N  
in those times, and the meanes to  
*helpe them.*

which is added, a Treatise of the diseases of Infants, and  
young Children: with the Cure of them, and also of  
*the Small Pox.*

With a Treatise for the Nurfing of Children.

Written in French by JAMES GVILLIMEAU  
the French Kings Chirurgion.

—————

L O N D O N,

Printed by Anne Griffin, for Ioyce Norton, and  
Richard Whitaker, 1635.



## Ad Authorem.

**T**ergeminam merito laudem sibi vindicet Autor,  
Cui Matris curæ est, cui Puerique salus.

Fœmina laudabit te iure Puerpera; grates  
Vir quoque pro saluâ coniuge, letus agat.

Inque tuum primos Infans formabit honorem  
Risus, cum tumidi carceris exit onus.

Infans, Vir, Mulier, pro visâ vota rependant:  
Chara tibi coniux, pignora chara ferat.

THE





# THE AVTHORS

## Epistle Introductory to the Reader.



*Although that man bee the most perfect and absolute of all other creatures, nevertheless, so weak is hee by Nature, and so subject to infirmitie, that Divine Hippocrates hath iudged him, to be even sicknesse it selfe from his very birth: He is not fit (saith hee) to be employed in any businesse while he sucketh: because he wholly depends upon the helpe of another: afterward when comes to more yeares, he growes stubborne, and unruly, and wants a Master to give him instruction: Againe, when he is growne to the prime of his age, he becomes audacious and proud. At last in his declining time, he falls into misery, having nothing left him, but the remembrance of his labours ill bestowed.*

*Pliny noteth, and experience shewes it to be true, that the ill sent onely of a Candle new put forth, is enough to destroy a childe in the mothers wombe, so that shee may be forced to fall in travaile, and be delivered before her time,*

*unlesse*

## An Introduction

unlesse her strength be the greater to resist the offence. And although the child stay the full time that nature hath prefixed him: yet commonly he is not able to get forth, or come safely into the world (yea though the birth be natural) without the helpe not onely of the Mother, and himselfe: but also of the Midwife and other women about her ready to receive and cherish him: And which is worst of all, if he be placed awry, or else be weak, and faint, or else if the Midwife be at the farthest of her skill, then if they will save the child, and so consequentely the mother from death: they must call a Chirurgion to deliver her, & bring the child into the world: which (that I may touch it by the way without taxing any) is commonly done too late, either through the wilfulnesse of the kinsfolkes, or obstinacy of the Midwives. But grant that the child come into the world of it selfe, without the help either of Chirurgion or Midwife: yet (as it is commonly said) he drawes his death after him: the which may be plainly perceived by the cries and laments which he maketh as soone as hee seeth the light, as if hee craved for help and succour. For if he should continue in that case that he comes from his mothers wombe, clogged with his bed or after-birth, without doubt this bad being patriset would infect the child, and at length kill it. Besides, oftentimes, if there were not helpe to make a free passage, in the fundament, yard, or other naturall places, that are sometimes closed up, there could neither sustenance bee received, nor excrements expelled, which would cause the child to be stifled, and choaked up.

Many times also the head, and other parts of the body (as the bones and legs) happen to be ill shapen, yea broken and out of ioynt, which would never come of themselves, into their proper and naturall place. There then it is necessary

to the Reader.

that the Chirurgion use his helpfull and skilfull hand: So that every man may plainly see the necessity and Antiquity of this worke: since the first practise in Chirurgery, that ever was done in the world, was the Omphalotomia, or cutting of the Navell, which Adam and Eve practised on their first child.

This therefore are the Motives that have induced me to publish this discourse, and therein to treat of such diseases as happen to women with child.

And herein I have endeavoured to helpe them both in their naturall & extraordinary travails: & to ease them in all such accidents, as may happen unto them in their childbed: being the rather incited therunto, by reading the complaints of women, related by Soranus. O male occupati virorū genus! occidimur nos, non morimur: & ab illis qui inter vos peritissimi existimatur perperā curate. Vos de qualibet levi fima vestrarū affectionū, libros ex libris faciētes, bibliothecas Voluminibus oneratas, de nostris inter acriis & difficillimis cruciatibus, nullā vel exiguā mōtione facta.

O men, how ill doe you bestow your time and paines! Alas, we women die not, but are tormented even to death: for those that are accounted the most expert and skilfull among you, take not that care of us which they should: you fill whole Libraries with large volumes & writings of every ligh and triviall disease of your own, making little or no mention at all of our well and insupportable travails.

I had purposed above fiftie yeares since, to have written somewhat concerning this subject in my books of Chirurgery: but having more maturely considered thereof, I thought it fitter to write a Treatise of it by itselfe, which it deser-

## An Introduction

with both for the difficulty of the subject, and for the rarity of the matter which I was desirous to observe therein: And indeed this worke excelleth all other, which are practised upon the body of man: whether ye respect the Antiquity, Necessitie, or dexteritie thereof.

For the Antiquity: without doubt the first worke in Chirurgery, that ever was in the world, was the cutting of the Navell, which; (as is said before) Adam practised upon his first borne.

Concerning the necessitie: some perhaps may object, that the bringing a bod of woman, is not so necessary a worke as these following:

To stay the fluxe of blood, whether it be in veine or Arter; to use the Trepan; to open the Emperna, or supuration in the breast; to cut one that hath the dropsie; or to let blood skilfully: For the fluxe of blood, it may be further said, that unlesse it be stopped by lesing the blood, the life also is endangered. But we must consider, that the blood oftentimes staying of it selfe, and experience evidently shewes, that nature, which is wise and provident doth commonly restraine, and stop it. I have bene present in many skirmishes, (yet farre enough out of gunshot) where I have dressed many that were wounded, who have had the great vessels in many parts of their bodies cut and bruised, having lost much blood upon the hurt, and yet it hath stopped and stayed of it selfe. Some will say, that he who hath his skull cleft by a wound, is in danger of death, if the blood that is shed upon the Membrane, be not taken forth by the means of the Trepan. For this blood would be wholly purrified, and withall, cover up the brain, the chiefe instrument of life, and whose use is more than necessary. Notwithstanding

## to the Reader.

withstanding we see, that in many, the flesh and matter comes forth by the Nose, Eares and mouth, without being trepanned, yea that it passeth even through their bones. We may say the like of such which have the Droppe, or Empyema, the breast of the one is full of Corruption, and the others belly full of water: they both choak and stife, unless the Chirurgion make incision: in the one making a Paracentesis, in the other opening the Pleura.

Yet nevertheless we see, that he which hath an Empyema or Suppuration doth oftentimes expell the matter, & flesh, by the mouth or Urine (the wayes being manifest, by which nature doth withdraw her selfe) & he that hath the droppe avoideth the water, either by urine, or stool, yea and by sweat, or by some little waye which Nature makes in some part of the body, as in the Nozell or legs: which we observe by daily experience in many men: and therefore wee may perceiue, that those practises are not alwayes so necessary, and requisite.

For letting blood, you will say, that hee hazardeth his life, (and that so dauntly) who being oppressed, and troubled with a great paine of his head or side, is not speedily let blood: because the blood that boyleth in his veins striveth onely to come forth. I will answer, that Nature very often sends it forth by the Nose, Mouth, Eyes, and Eares: by stooles also and other parts, disburthening her selfe to the sickes ease and profit: But it is not so in the delivery of women: for if the entrance of the womb be closed (as it is seen in divers) whether it be naturally, by reason of a strong and thicke membrane, which shutteth up the passage: or otherwise because some scarre happening there, hath hardened, and shrank up the sides of the neck of the said wombe:

## An Introduction

it would be impossible that nature should ever be able to separate and breake through these impediments: for as for the one it is hard for a peece or quill to passe here, and for the other you cannot put in a small probe through the little hole which is in the middlest of the membrane. And yet I have had the experience thereof in two women, which were never the lesse with child, as I will shew more at large hereafter. So that either the Chirurgion's help must be used, or else both the Mother and the Child would die miserably.

Some may be thought that the Mother might open the passage her selfe, by tearing the part so bound by the scarre, and breaking through the said membrane. But will you answer me, for her which hath her child turned awry and lies double in her womb, and falleth into a Convulsion, or fluxe of blood, or both together. The Mother not being able by her to turne it, or pull it forth especially if the head of it be intangled and fastned betwene the bones of our Pubis, so that it is impossible to turne it safe and sound, except the Chirurgion use his industry and skill.

Now for the dexterity: there is no comparison between this and other practises, for there be no workes to be done in Chirurgery, where it is not necessary, to have the benefit either of day light or candle light, and the part which is to be handled and dressed must be apparent and laid open to the eye.

Whereas contrariwise in this worke as well by reason of the company present, as also, least the woman should be afraid, the very entrance wherby he should put in his hand, they are constrained to hide: and then his hand being there, he must search for the child (howsoever it be placed) not being able to see it. And if there be found two, three, or four

Children,

## to the Reader.

Children, yea, *some time five* (as Albertus Magnus reporteth, he saw in Germany a Woman that brought forth to the number of threescore and five children, being delivered every ye. re. of five) then (I say) I leave you to iudge what skill and dexterity the Chirurgeon ought to use in seeking them one after another, if they come amisse.

On the other side, as often as a woman is well delivered by the help and hand of the Chirurgeon, there life is given to two, to wit. to the mother and the child. And therefore as this worthy man saith, *In partu invocatur Dei auxilium: queritur enim & parturientis & maternis salus.* When a woman is in travail, they call upon God for helpe: because they desire to save both the mother and the child. Now in al other practises, though they attaine to their wished end, yet can there bee but one onely good at once. Whereby it may be judged, that this practise is both for the Antiquity, necessity and dexterity thereof, the most laudable and commendable of all others.

To make the which more usefull and the better to instruct the young Chirurgeon: I have gathered together all that I could possibly, out of that which I have observed this forty yeares and above, wherein I have practised it, and seen it practised in the greatest families both within and without this kingdome, where, thanks be to God, good use hath bin made of me. And withall I have not refused nor disdained to goe unto the meanest, moved partly by charity, and partly to make my selfe more and more experienced therein.

Having then conferred to gether, what either the Grecians and Latins both Ancient and Moderne have written, with that I have beene able to observe, and having reduced it all into one, I have put it into French in favour of those

## An Introduction

*who are not so well learned, and have not the knowledge of the Greeke or Latine tongues.*

*Some will say (to diminish that little honour, which I might get by this my labor) that the Ancients have written the greatest part hereof. But they shall learne from the mouth of this great Oracle, That there is no lesse wit and understanding required to be able to judge of Sciences formerly written, than to be the first Authors of them.*

*I know moreover, that in the Doctrine, and much more in the phrase, some will finde many things to be reprehended. But I intreat the reader, that he would receive it in as good part as I offer it him: & likewise exhort others (that are more experienced, than I am, to doe better. Let them shew me my faults friendly; and I will not refuse, willingly to retract them: after the example of that divine Hippocrates, who freely confessed his saying openly, that hee had gotten more di honor, than either glory, or credit, by practising of  
Phyick.*

*The*



*The Translators Preface.*



Thus farre hath the Author  
pleaded for him selfe, whom  
while I Translate, least the  
fault be translated upon mee, I  
will speake somewhat for my  
selfe, before I bee accused: least when I  
am accused, there bee no body to speake for  
me: If therefore it bee thought prejudiciall;  
either to the literary common wealth of  
*Physicke*, that I have exported and made  
common a commoditie, which the learned  
would have had private to themselves: or  
if I have beene offensive to *VVomen*, in pro-  
fituting and divulging that, which they  
would not have come to open light, and  
which beside cannot be exprest in such mo-  
dest termes, as are fit for the Virginitie of  
pen and paper, and the white sheetes of their  
Child-bed; I must (as well as I can) defend  
my selfe from these imputations, and shew  
my care to keepe both learning and mode-  
stie illibate, and inviolable. First then, I  
have done no more in this, than the Au-

*The Translators Preface.*

thou hath in his French Copy, which is common to be had and read in that vulgar tongue: in defence of which, and this the shadow thereof, I must say that it is not writ so much for the learned (who notwithstanding, if they have not the french, may make use of this) as for the Chirurgions, and Midwives, who are called to this kind of employment. As for women (whom I am most afraid to offend) they must bee content to have their infirmities detected, if they will have helps for them, which I wish might not come to any care or eye, but to those which they themselves would have acquainted therewith; and as well for their sakes, as mine owne satisfaction, I have endeavoured to be as private and retired, in expressing all the passages in this kinde, as possibly I could.

And with this I hope all good Gentlewomen will rest satisfied: to whom I wish all happinesse of increate, and all increate of happinesse, that they may have a good houre for this businesse, and for all other Contentments, many good dayes and yeares.

A



## A Summary or Briefe of all the Chapters contained in this Worke.

### *That which is handled in the first Booke.*



He government and ordering of a woman, shee is to keepe the  
the goe with child, and the meanes to help her, whatfoe-  
ver sicknesse doth happen in that space. Fol. r.

1 The signes, wherby to know that a woman is with Child.	3
2 The signes to know whether she will have a Boy, or a Wench.	3
3 The signes to know that a woman hath two Children.	12
4 Of false Conceptions.	13
5 Of the order of Diet, which a great belliced woman ought to keepe	18
6 How a woman must governe her selfe all the time of her being with Child.	27
7 Of divers Accidents which trouble and molest women while they are with Child.	32
8 Of Womens longing, called Pica.	34
9 Of Distastefulnesse, and of the Hicket.	41
10 Of the Vomiting, which comes upon a woman with child.	43
11 Of the paines of the Stomack, Flancks, and Belly, which happens to a woman with child.	47
12 Of the paine of the Back, Hips, and Groine, and of the difficulty of making Water, which chaunceth to women with child.	49
13 Of the palpitation and beating of the Heart: As also of the Swou- nings which happen to women with child.	52
14 Of the Cough.	54
15 Of Costiveness or hardnesse of the Belly.	58
16 Of the Fluxe of the Belly, or Laska.	61
17 Of the swelling of their Legs and Thighs.	65
18 Of Abortment, or the meanes to helpe them that beare not their children to the full time.	69

# The Contents.

That which is handled in the second Booke.

The meanes to helpe a Woman with Child, either  
in her naturall Travaille, or that which shall bee

(containing) 16 Naturall.

	Fol. 79
<b>M</b> idwives.	
1 What manner of woman a Midwife ought to be.	84
2 What must be observed when a woman is ready to fall in travaile.	86
3 Of the dutie and office of a Midwife, concerning the first time she must observe in her travaile.	91
4 Of the second time she must observe.	93
5 Of the third time she must observe.	97
6 Of the care and attendance that must be had, to a woman that is newly delivered.	103
7 Of painfull and difficult delivery, and the causes thereof.	104
8 The meanes to helpe Women that are delivered with difficulty and great paine.	113
9 Of divers kinds of deliveries which are performed by the Chi- rurgions help. And first what a Chirurgion ought to consider, before he goe about this worke.	123
10 The meanes of helping a woman that is troubled with a Fluxe of blood, and Convulsions, in the time of her travaile.	125
11 The way to help a woman in travaile, when the After-birth comes for most.	133
12 The meanes to helpe a woman, when her child is dead in her wombe.	136
13 The way to draw forth a child that is puff up and swolne.	104
14 The meanes to helpe a woman, when her child comes with the head forward, having his necke and head turned awry.	144
15 The meanes to helpe a woman, when the child commeth with an arme and the head for most.	147
16 The meanes to helpe a woman, when the child comes with both his armes, and the head for most.	149
17 The meanes to helpe a woman, when the child comes with one, or both the feet for most.	152
18 The meanes to helpe the delivery, when the child commeth, with both his Hands, and both his feet together for most.	160
19 The meanes to helpe the woman when the child commeth double, putting for most, either his sides or his backe, and shoulders, or his but- tocks.	163
20 The	163
21 The	163

## The Contents.

- |    |   |     |
|----|---|-----|
| 21 | The manner of helping the delivertie, when the child cometh with his Breast and Belly foremost.                                 | 166 |
| 22 | The meanes to help the delivery when there is two Twins, and the one comes with his head, and the other with his feet foremost. | 169 |
| 23 | The meanes to help the woman that hath two Twins, when they both come with their feet foremost.                                 | 173 |
| 24 | Of the After-birth, which is retained, and staves after the delivery, and the meanes to bring it away.                          | 176 |
| 25 | The way to take forth a child, by the <i>Cæsarian</i> section.  | 185 |
- 

## What is contained in the third Booke.

### The Government and ordering of a Woman newly delivered, and of the diseases that happen unto her in her Month.

- |    |  |     |
|----|--|-----|
| 1  | Of her Diet.   | 189 |
| 2  | What must be done to her Breasts, Belly, and neather parts.                            | 194 |
| 3  | Of the Accidents that follow the Deliverie; and first of the Gripings or After-throws. | 206 |
| 4  | Of the falling downe of the Fundament and Matrice.                                     | 210 |
| 5  | Of the hurts and exorations, which happen in the neather parts after the delivery.     | 211 |
| 6  | Of the Hemorrhoides.   | 215 |
| 7  | Of the immoderate flowing or coming down of the ordinary evacuations or purgings.      | 220 |
| 8  | Of the suppression or stopping of the said purgings.                                   | 227 |
| 9  | Of the false Conception, staying behind after the delivery.                            | 232 |
| 10 | Of the precipitation or falling downe of the Matrice.                                  | 235 |
| 11 | Of the sticking and growing together of the necke of the Matrice.                      | 248 |

F I N I S.





# THE GOVERNMENT

and ordering of a Woman the  
nine months that she goes with child:

And also the means to help her, what  
sicknesses she is most liable to, and  
what she is most liable to, and  
what she is most liable to, and

## The first Booke.

Written by JAMES GWILLEMEAY,  
the French Kings Chirurgion in Ordinary,  
and sworn at PARIS

### THE PREFACE.

**H**ave purposed only in this Work  
to handle the government of a  
Woman with child, and the means  
to help her in her travail; toge-  
ther with the order which is ne-  
cessary for her in her child-bed. But because this  
government is particular & proper to a Woman  
with child, before we give order, hereunto, we  
must first find out whether she be with child or no.

A

The

## CHAP. I.

*The signes to know whether a woman be  
with child, or no.*



The Chirurgi-  
ons must be  
ware of judge-  
ing rashly.

Chirurgion must be very circum-  
spect in determining whether a wo-  
man be conceived or no; because  
many have prejudiced their know-  
ledge and discretion, by judging  
rashly hereof. For there is nothing more ridicu-  
lous than to assure a woman that shee is with  
childe; and afterward that her naturall sicknesse,  
or store of water should come from her; and in-  
stead of a childe some windie matter should breake  
from her, and to her belly fall, and grow flat againe,  
which hath hapned unto many men that have  
beene well esteemed, both for their learning and  
experience. And wee have seene the experience  
hereof in some women, which were (without  
all question) thought to be so great, that the Mid-  
wife was even ready to receive the childe; who  
notwithstanding have beene freed and acquitted  
hereof, either by their naturall purgings and eva-  
cuations, or by voiding of water, or else expel-  
ling of wind. The which hapned to *Madam P.* to  
her great grieve, who was delivered of certaine  
gallons of water, when she thought assuredly that  
she had beene with childe. I saw the contrary hap-  
pen to the daughter of *Mr. Marw*, who was judged  
by

A Story.



*Lib. 1. the happy delivery of Women.* 3

by foure of the chiefe Physicians, and as many Chirurgions, & two Midwives; not to have been with child; and yet being dead, there was found in her body, a child betwene sixe and seven months old. And of late memorie, some of the most expert Physicians, and Chirurgions of her time, undertooke the cure of an honest woman, and from the third untill the eighth moneth of our time, administered unto her infinite many Clisters, Apozemes, Potions, Fomentations, and Injections, and yet could not they provoke her natural sicklesse, much lesse cause her to bee delivered. At length in the ninth moneth, she thinking that she had had the Collicke, was brought a bed of a faire daughter, being verily perswaded even then when shee was in travaile that shee was not with child, as she had assured us, all the time that she went. So that a Chirurgion being called to give his opinion of the conception of a woman, whether it be in a judiciall, or private case, must be very wary and circumspect what judgement he gives herein.

Another,

Directions  
for the Chi-  
rurgion, 4

The ancient and modern writers have left some signes whereby wee may foretell it, which are collected from the Husband, from the Wife, from the Child, and from the Midwife.

As for those signes which are taken from the Man, they are these: If he finde an extraordinarie contentment in the company of his Wife; and if he feele at the same time a kind of sucking or drawing at the end of his yard; if hee returne from the field of nature, not over-moist, these are signes that

Signes of con-  
ception taken  
from the man.

Experiment.

Signes taken  
from the wo-  
man.

and woman may have conceived. And by these obser-  
vations I have known men which have assured their  
Wives that they have got them with child; as soon  
as they have had their company.

The signes which are taken from the Woman  
are more manifest and certaine: and although the  
greatest part of them bee found in Women and  
Maids, which cannot have their naturall courses;  
yet nevertheless all these signes joyned together,  
a man may presume as farre of them as art will per-  
mit; and they be these: If he received an extraor-  
dinarie delight in the company of her Husband:  
If from her naturall parts (whether they continue  
dry or moist) there issue or flow nothing forth, be-  
cause it is no necessary consequence, that these  
parts should at times remaine dry, since the Matrice  
retaineth onely that, which is fit for the conforma-  
tion of the child. Likewise, if at the same time shee  
hath no ill of a swelling and stretching, and feetes  
within her shaking or quivering (such as we com-  
monly find presently upon making of water) which  
runneth through the whole body, with a kinde of  
chillness, and is felt chiefly betweene the shoul-  
ders and the backe; with some paine about the Na-  
vell, and a rumbling or disquietnesse in the neather  
belly, which hapneth because the Matrice shrinks  
in close together, to entertaine and embrace the  
matter of generation which it hath drawne and  
suckt in, feeling thereby a kind of tickling. Againe,  
if within few dayes shee falls vomiting, and spit-  
ting, distaste her meate, groweth dull, carelesse, and  
quallmish,

qualmish, longeth after strange things, finding her belly fallen, and growne flat, according to the French proverbe.

*Au ventre plat, enfant y a.*

In a belly which is flat,  
Ther's a child, be sure of that.

Which makes them oftentimes to complaine and say they be quite fallen away. Then not long after her belly swels and grows bigger; her hips and raines are enlarged; her courses appeare not, which should flow at certaine times, (although some have them when they be with child.) Likewise if towards the second moneth her eyes grow hollow & wan, her eye-balls shew lesse: the lids be loose, limber, and soft: the veines in the corners of her eyes more swollen and bigger then ordinary. For as *Hippocrates* saith, if thou canst not find by any meanes whether a woman be with childe, or no, her very eyes wil tel thee for their eyes be more hollow, & sunck inward, and the white is turned bluish: the veines and arteryes of their neck are puffed up, and more apparent then usually: their breasts grow big, and hard, with some paine and pricking, having also milke within them: the nipple waxeth firme, and hard: red, if it be a boy; and sometime blackish, if it be a wench, which happeneth about the third or fourth moneth, when they begin to quicken.

Some judge of their being with childe by the urine, as if it bee white, and clearely mingled with little moats, and that at the top there is perceived

Some women when they be with child have their courses.

*Hippocrates*

Signes taken from vrines.

as it were a little cloud like to the Rainebow; or of an Opall colour. At the bottome there appeares a certaine thicke sediment, which being shaken, spreads it selfe into little flockes, like to carded wooll. Towards the end, their vrine is thicke and reddish, by reason of the long retention of their naturall courses.

Experiment of  
*Fernelius.*

*Fernelius* makes this triall, which is, to take equall quantities of the womans vrine, and of white wine, and to shake them well together; if this mixture lookelike the broth of Beanes, it is a signe shee is with child.

*Hippocrates.*  
Hydromell is  
made of hony  
and water boi-  
led together.

*Hippocrates*, sets downe divers experiments, as to give the woman Hydromell to drinke made with raine water, at night when she goes to bed, or else Hony and Anniseed beaten and dissolved in water. If she be with child, she will feele great paines and griping in her belly, (unlesse shee be used to such kind of drinke, as *Avicen* saith.) Besides, if shee receive below any strong or stinking odor or smell, her clothes being well wrapped close about her, and the sent pierce not up into her nose, she hath conceived: As also, having over night put up a clove of Garlicke; if in the morning the savour or taste come not into her mouth.

*Avicen.*

Truest signes  
gathered from  
the Child.

But these signes are not so certaine, the truest and surest are those which are collected from the child, when hee begins to stirre and move, which commonly happens in the third and fourth moneth. This motion is very gentle, not unlike the stirring of a flie when he flieth.

Another

# Lib. I. the happy deliverie of Women.

7

Another certaine signe may be perceived by the Midwife, who putting up her finger into the womb to touch the inner Orifice therof, if the woman be with childe, she shall finde it so close shut, that the point of a needle will scarce enter therein, yet soft, and without any hardnesse, which also will bee drawne upward, being shrunke, and as it were trusted up, because the body of the Matrice doth gather it selfe together to embrace the seed, which is the reason that the Midwife can very hardly come to reach it with her finger.

Some women when they be with childe hate the company of their husbands: which quality is said also to bee in bruit beasts when they be great with young, who commonly shun the company of the Male. And surely there be certaine times and seasons of the year proper for bruit beasts to couple, but man (as *Pliny* saith) hath neither time nor season limited him, neither day nor hoare appointed him, that so he might have his desire at all times; which hath bene thus ordained by nature, as being more fit and necessary for man to multiply in his kinde (he being the lively image of God, and made to behold his glory) then for bruit beasts, which were created onely for the use of man.

I know well the answer that those two noble Ladies, *Poppa* the daughter of *Agrippina*, and *Julia* the daughter of *Augustus*, made concerning this matter. The one said, that bruit beasts cannot taste the delight which women receive that are with childe, because they are without reason: and the

Signes gathered by the Midwife.

Some women when they be with childe hate the company of their husbands: which quality is said also to bee in bruit beasts when they be great with young, who commonly shun the company of the Male.

A pleasant answer.

the other said, that *When her ship was laden with wares,*  
*then she could take no passengers.*

CHAP. II. Of the Child-birth.

*The signes whereby to know whether a woman be  
 with childe of a Boy or a Wench.*

**H**AVING shewne the meanes to know  
 whether a woman be truly concei-  
 ved, it will not be from the purpose  
 to handle this question for the satisfi-  
 cation of some curious minds, who  
 as soone as the Chirurgion hath given his censurē  
 that a woman is with childe, demands presently of  
 him whether it will be a boy or a wench? But as it  
 is very hard to know at the first whether the wo-  
 man be with child or no, so by great reason must it  
 needs be farre more difficult to discern and dis-  
 tinguish the difference of the sex, and to deter-  
 mine whether it will be a boy or a wench.

The difference  
 of sex is hard,  
 to foretell.

I know there are some that boast they can cer-  
 tainly do it, but for the most part it hapneth rather  
 by chance, than through either art or skill. And for  
 prooffe thereof, I have shewed them a childe  
 newly come from the mothers wombe, onely lay-  
 ing my hand upon the privie parts, yet durst they  
 not be so bold as give their opinion thereof, saying  
 that it were more easie to judge of it when it was  
 in the wombe, seeing that from thence might be  
 gathered many evident signes; but wee must ac-  
 count the greatest part of them to be uncertaine,

as

*Lib. I. the happy delivery of Women.*

as we have formerly said. Nevertheless, to distinguish the Male from the Female, we will presently shew all the markes which we ever knew, or could observe, either out of the ancient, or moderne writers.

And first of all, young women commonly are with child rather of a boy, than a wench, because they be hotter then the elder women, which was observed by *Aristotle*, who saith farther, that if an aged woman, which never had children before, chance to conceive, one may be sure it will be a wench. The like hapneth (as some write) to women which conceive when the winde is in the South, who for the most part bring forth daughters, and when the Northwind bloweth, sonnes.

*Aristotle.*

*Hippocrates* saith, that a woman which goeth with a boy hath a good colour, for a woman in her case, but if it bee of a wench, shee will have a worse complexion. Likewise if the right breast be harder and firmer, the nipple hard, red, and more eminent, the milke white and thicke, which being milked or spirted against a sleeke stone, or some such smooth thing, continues in a round forme like a pearle, and being cast even into water it dissolveth not, but sinks directly to the bottom: and if you make a cake with the said milke and flower, and in the baking it continues firme and close, it is a signe the woman is with child of a boy. Again, she that goeth with a boy, hath the right side of her belly bigger, and more copped, and there the child lieth most of times. This motion commonly at six weekes

Observation.  
*Hippocras.*

Signe of a boy.

weekes is scarce sensible, but at two moneths and a halfe more manifest. The male childe lyeth high above the Navell by reason of his heate, and the Female at the bottome of the belly, because of her coldnesse and weight. They which be with child of a boy are more quicke and nimble in all their actions, and be in better health of body, without being subject to many infirmities, which commonly happen to women with childe of a wench.

Signes gather-  
red out of  
Avicen.

*Avicen* observeth these signes, That a woman with child of a boy hath the pulse of her right side stronger, higher, and thicker, then that of the left: shee will reach out her right hand rather then her left, and in going she wil alwaies set forth the right foote foremost: her right brest is bigger then the left, and the right eye greater, brighter, and more sparkling: and if a woman about her last moneths have any great sicknesse, or any throwes, without being delivered, it is some likelihood that she is with child of a boy, since the male child is faster tied and bound then the female, because the ligaments which hold and fasten him are stronger and dryer then they that bind and support a wench.

Signes of a  
wench.

A woman which is with child of a daughter hath a pale, heavy, and swarth countenance, a melancholique eye: she is wayward, fretfull, and sad: shee beares in her face as *Hippocrates* saith, *Maculam solam*, that is to say, her face is spotted with red like those who have beene much in the sunne: her left brest is bigger then the right, and the top of the nipple black. The milke which comes forth of her breasts:

*Hippocrates.*  
*lib. de stipilitate.*



# Lib. I. the happy deliverie of Women.

41

breasts is ble with, thin and warriſh: her belly is flat, and ſhe feeles her burthen move on the left ſide, and that not before the fourth moneth: the veins of her thighs and groine are bigger and more knotty on the left ſide than on the right. An honeſt Gentlewoman aſſured me that ſhe had made triall of this receipt, which is, to take an equall quantity of Claret-wine, and of urine made in the morning, put them together into a glaſſe, and let them ſtand a whole day, if there appeare in the bottome a groſſe cloud, thicke like to Beane-broth, it is a ſigne the woman is with childe of a boy; if it appeare in the middeſt, it is ſigne of a wench; if there be nothing found in the bottome but the ordinary reſi- dence of urine, it ſhews ſhe is not with child at all.

An experiment

An experiment likewise may be made out of the practice of *Livia*, the Mother of the Emperour *Tiberius*, who being with child, and deſirous to know with what ſhe went, tooke an egge from under a Hen that ſate, and kept it warme ſo long in her hands, till at laſt a Cock-chicken was hatched out of it, whereby ſhee knew that ſhee ſhould have a ſonne, which proved to be *Tiberius* the Emperour, as *Suetonius* reporteth.

Another experiment of *Livia*.

Here will it not bee beſide our purpoſe to ſet downe what *Hippocrates* writes in his booke *de ſu- perſatione*, of the meates how to get a man or woman-child. He that will (ſaith he) beget a ſon, muſt know his wife as ſoone as her courſes are ſtay- ed, and then try the utmoſt of his ſtrength; but if he deſire to get a daughter, then muſt hee compa-

The means how to beget a ſonne or a daughter.

ny with his wife a good while after her courses, or at that time when she hath them: and beside, he must tie his right stone as hard as he can endure it, and when he would have a sonne, hee must tie the left. But *Aristotle* seems wrongfully to blame this worthy man, when he saith, that the generation of Males or Females depends of the strength of the seed, and not of the stones, the use whereof he saith, is not for generation. But experience teacheth us the contrary, for the Countymen when they would have a Bull beget a Cow-calse, or a Bull-calse, they tie the right stone for the one, and the left for the other.

### CHAP. III.

*The signes whereby to know that a woman  
getteth with two children.*

**T**He signes that a woman hath conceived two children, doe seldome appeare before the third or fourth moneth, which is then knowne, both by the moving of the children, and also by the greatnesse & swelling of the womans belly. As for the motion, if it be felt strong and forcible, both on the right and the left side, at the same instant, then it is apparent that there be two children. Likewise for the greatnesse of her belly, if it appeare more swolne & bigger than in her other child-bearing, if the sides be higher than the middle of her belly, and from the navel downward there appeare as it were a line of separation

To know whether a woman will bring two children.



ration between both sides crested, if the woman  
beare her burthen with difficulty, and her belly  
fall upon her thighs and hips, then may you safely  
say that she goeth with two children.

CHAP. IV.  
Of false conception.



Women are oftentimes deceived in  
reckoning themselves with child, for  
they thinke themselves with child,  
when it is nothing but the stopping  
of their naturall sicknesse, which keepeth  
not due course. Some have a false concep-  
tion which is as it were the beginning of Mola.  
Others have the Mola it selfe, which we common-  
ly call the Moone-calf.

False conception is a lump of flesh gathered to-  
gether commonly like to the gizzard of a fowle,  
which is bigger or lesser, according to the continu-  
ance of it, which nature commonly expelleth in  
the second, third, or fourth month. But the Mola is  
farre bigger, and continueth a year or two, yea, ten  
or twelue, and sometimes as long as the woman  
lives. Of this Mola there be two kinds, the one may  
be called a true, the other a false one. The true Mo-  
la is fleshy, being nothing else but an unprofitable  
mass, without shape or forme, hard and firme,  
bred within the Matrice, and cleaving to the sides  
thereof. The false Mola is of three sorts, the one  
windie, being a collection of grosse winds; the se-  
cond watrish, or a clumping together of waters; the  
third

colord like M  
white like  
white

What a false  
conception is.

Mola is either  
true or false.

third humoral, or a meeting of many humours: All three contained within the capacity of the womb, which doth make them differ from the swelling, hardnesse, or Scyrrhus of the said wombe, or from any flesh, water, or humour, which may chance to cleave to, or touch the outward part thereof. These are often bred together with the child, but then they cause death, either for that the childe is deceived of his nourishment, which is carried to the Mola; or because he wanting room, cannot grow and come to perfection.

Mola bred together with the childe.

Hippocrates.

*Hippocrates* saith, that there bee some living and some dead Mole. The dead are like to the false burthens, so called, because women carry them not long, as being but lightly tied and fastned to the sides of the Matrice. Sometime they are divided into divers severall peeces, so that *Nicholas Nicotus* saith, hee saw a woman which cast forth nine of them in one day, the least whereof weighed foure pound. The quicke and living Moles are they which wholly cleave to the wombe, and contiane with the woman even to her death.

Cause of the fleshy Mole.

The cause of the fleshy Mole, according to the ancient writers, cannot wholly proceed from the woman, but the man must adde something thereunto. *Giles* holdeth, that it is bred when the mans seed is weake, barren, imperfect, or in little quantity, and for the most part choked through the abundance of the menstruous blood, which is grosse and thicke, unfit for the framing of a childe, so that in stead thereof is bred a lump of flesh, that by little

little and little increaseth, being wrapped in his owne membrane, which nature effecteth, as desirous to bring forth anything rather then to be idle,

The windy Mole is ingendred through want of heate in the Matrice, and other parts adjoyning, as the Liver and Spleene; whereby much winde is bred and shut up in the emptinesse of the wombe. It may also come from without, as in women newly delivered, and in such which having had their naturall courses in great abundance, doe venture too soone into the cold aire.

Windy Mole.

The watry Mole proceeds from the abundance of watry shoures which is sent from the Liver, or the Spleene, or other parts, thereabouts; or else through the weaknesse of the Matrice, which cannot assimilate the blood that is brought to nourish it, part whereof is turned into water, and being not voided, stayed in the wombe.

Watry Mole.

The humorall Mole is bred by reason of too much moisture, as of ferious, or whayih humors; of the whites, or watry evacuations, which come downe through the vessels of the Matrice, and are stayed in the concavity thereof.

Humorall.

False conception hath some common signes with the true, as suppression of the naturall courses, depraved appetite, distaste fulnesse, vomiting, swelling of the belly and breasts, so that it is very hard to distinguish the one from the other. But these that follow are more proper to the false, then the true birth; for (as Hippocrates saith) In false conception, or Mola, the face is commonly puffed up, their breasts

Common signes.

Signes of false conception.

breasts which were swollen at the beginning, doe fall, and daily wax soft, limber, and lanke, and without milke. In the end, the face, breasts, armes, thighs, and legs grow leane and thin: true it is, that they swell towards night, like those that have the droppe, the belly riseth and groweth quickly, and withall very hard, for the most part of an equal roundnesse, with divers pricking paines in the bottoome of the belly that never cease, which makes them that they can hardly walke, being hindered as it were with a heavy burthen, and haing oftentimes a windinesse in the wombe, as *Aulus* reporteth.

Signes from  
the motion.

The said *Hippocrates* observeth, how that by the motion it may easily bee knowne, for in true conception the male child beginneth to stirre at the end of the third moneth, or sooner; and the female at the third or fourth moneth; and where there is no such quickning, we must observe whether there be any milke in the breasts, if there bee none found, it is a signe that it is a Mole. Beside, the mother feeleth the childe move every way, both on the right side, and on the left, as most above, as below, and in the middle, without any helpe. But in false conception, though there be some motion, it is not animall, but proceedeth rather from the expulsive faculty of the Mother then of the Mole which having no living soule endeavoureth not of it selfe to come forth, neither provoketh the wombe as the child doth, who having need of aire to breath in, Tecks after it. But this is a most evident signe when the

The child moveth of it selfe, and not the Mole.

the woman lies downe on either side, for then she  
 feels it like a bowle, and is not able to uphold  
 or stay it; yea, and being laid on her backe, if her  
 belly be pressed or crushed, it will remaine in the  
 place whither it is thrust, without coming backe  
 againe. Now that which most assureth us, is, when  
 the nine moneths are past, and the woman not des-  
 livered, but her belly growes bigger, and swelleth  
 more and more, and all the other parts grow leane  
 and lesse, this is a sure signe of a Mole, though there  
 be some women that have borne their children  
 ten yea. eleven moneths.

True signes.

The signes of the windy Mole are these, the belly  
 is equally swolne and stretched like a bladder, so-  
 ter than the fleshy Mole, and chiefly neare the  
 groine and neather belly, which being struck upon  
 foundeth like a Tabour: sometime it decreaseth,  
 and other while it swelleth more: it is sooner bred  
 and increased than the fleshy or watery, and stret-  
 ches the belly as though it would teare it, which is  
 not proper to the fleshy.

Signes of the  
 windy.

As for the watery and humorall, the signes are  
 almost alike, the belly growes bigge, and riseth by  
 little and little. If you touch it with your finger,  
 sometimes the print thereof will remaine behind:  
 it is even without any hardnesse. It is true, that the  
 woman lying on her backe, her flanks are fuller and  
 bigger than the middle, and bottome of the belly  
 which wax flat: the water and humour running  
 from one side to the other; and in shaking the bel-  
 ly, they feele a swimming and floring of water.

Signes of the  
 watry and hu-  
 morall,

C

This

Difference  
betweene the  
Watt, and  
Humorall.

This difference may bee also added, that in the warrish, the flankes, groine, and sometime the thighs are more distended and swolne than in the humorall, because the warrish substance stealeth thither soonest: besides, that which passeth forth, and bloweth below, is cleare like water, without any ill smell; but that which floweth in the humorall is reddish, and like to the washing of flesh, and of a bad sent. This also is to be observed, that in the false conception the naturall courses flow not, and that the Navel doth shew it selfe but little, or not at all, as it commonly doth when the Mother is with child. Concerning the cure thereof I meane (God willing) to handle it hereafter.

#### CHAP. V.

*What diet and order a woman with child  
ought to keepe.*

**T**Hat a woman with child may enjoy her perfect health, shee must diligently observe that which consisteth in the use of the six things not naturall, which are the Aire, Meate and Drinke, Exercise and Rest, Sleeping and Waking, Fulnesse and Emptinesse, and the Passions of the Minde.

Good Aire fit  
for a woman  
with child.

First therefore she must dwell and live in a good and well tempered Aire, which is neither too hot, nor too cold or warrish: not subject to any foggie mists or winds, and especially the South wind For

(as



(As Hippocrates saith) when those winds doe blow, upon every light occasion, women miscarry. The Northwind also is hurtfull unto them, for those winds breed thin rheumes, distillations, and troublesome Coughs in great-bellied women, causing them oftentimes to abort, or be delivered before their due time. Likewise such winds as bring with them ill smells and vapours, which being drawne in together with the Aire we breath, into the Lungs, do many times breed very dangerous and troublesome diseases. Aristotle saith, that the smell of a Candle put forth, may cause a woman to abort, or loose her fruite: wherefore she must beware of all ill Aire, and make her abode in houses well & pleasantly scented, shunning as much as may be possible all bad favours.

The Cough  
naught for  
women with  
child.

Bad smells to  
be avoided.

Concerning her dyet, she must use meates which bee of good nourishment, and breed good juice, moderately drying. The quantity must bee sufficient both for herselfe, and for her child, and therefore they are to bee dispensed withall from fasting at any time: for sometime too much abstinence makes the child weake and sickly, and causeth him often to bee borne before his time, seeking after nourishment, which he cannot find within his Mothers body. As also the too great quantity of meat his Mother takes, may often stifle him, or else make him grow so big, that he cannot keepe himselfe in his place, which constraines him either to come forth, or else makes him sickly, seeing that those meates are corrupted wherewith he is nourished

Her Dyet

Too much  
meate stifeth.

and *Seco Hippocrates* writeth in *Epidem.* that the Siller of *Cains Duellius* after shee had eat her fill, aborted.

Saltmeats bad

All meats which are either too hot, cold, or too moist, are to be avoided, and chiefly in the beginning of meales; as also those which are too salt, or over-much spiced; and likewise all baked meats are utterly forbidden: *Aristotle* and *Plinie* write, that if a woman with childe eat much salt meat, her childe will bee borne without nailes; which shewes that he will not bee long lived. Her bread must be of good Wheat, well kneaded, light, and also well baked. For her meat, shee may use Hen, Chicken, Capon, yong Pigeons, Turtle, Pheasants; Larks, Partridge, Veale & Mutton: and for Herbs, let her take Lettuce, Endive, Borage, Buglosse, and Sorrell, abstaining from all raw Sallads. Shee may close her stomack after meat with Beares, or Quinces baked or preserved; as likewise with Cherries or Damsons. Shee must shunne all diueticall things, which prouoketh either urine, or the naturall courses; and such as are windie, as Pease and Beanes. Notwithstanding women with childe haue oftentimes such disordinate appetite, by reason of some salt or sharp humor which is contained within the membranes of the stomack, that they desire to eat Coales, Chalke, Ashes, Wax, Salt-sifted w<sup>th</sup> yea, and unwatered; and to drinke Verjuice & Vinegar, yea very drégs, so that it is impossible to hinder them from eating and tasting them. But yet they must refraine and over-master themselves there-

Firmeats.

Hearbs.

Diuretical and windy meats are naught.

Shee may close her stomack after meat with Beares, or Quinces baked or preserved; as likewise with Cherries or Damsons. Shee must shunne all diueticall things, which prouoketh either urine, or the naturall courses; and such as are windie, as Pease and Beanes. Notwithstanding women with childe haue oftentimes such disordinate appetite, by reason of some salt or sharp humor which is contained within the membranes of the stomack, that they desire to eat Coales, Chalke, Ashes, Wax, Salt-sifted w<sup>th</sup> yea, and unwatered; and to drinke Verjuice & Vinegar, yea very drégs, so that it is impossible to hinder them from eating and tasting them. But yet they must refraine and over-master themselves there-

there is as much as they can see that such food  
 may much hurt and hinder both their owne and  
 their childes health. Neverthelesse if they cannot  
 forbear, suffer them a little, and let them have  
 their longings, for feare lest it should prove worse  
 with them: For I have seene many women which  
 being hindered & forbidden from using such trash  
 have presently fallen into travell: and in others,  
 their children have carried the markes of some of  
 the things they so earnestly desired and longed af-  
 ter. Beside, although that such meats (for the most  
 part are very bad and contrary, yet for the desire  
 they have to eat them, they are digested com-  
 monly without hurting the party at all. Meat and  
 drinke (saith Hippocrates) is better and fitter though  
 it be somewhat worse, than that which is better  
 and not so agreeable and pleasant.

Accidents that  
may happen.

Lib 2. Aph. 38.  
 Cibus & potus  
 det rior, suavior  
 tamen, multo  
 quidem sed in-  
 suavioribus est  
 antepotendus.

For her Drink, she may use Claret wine moderate  
 and not too strong which she must allow very well.  
 For this Wine hath power to comfort and streng-  
 then the stomackes, and all the other parts serving  
 for nourishment and generation, and if she cannot  
 away with Wine, let her drinke Hytromell, or Bar-  
 ley-water well boyled.  
 Her sleep must be in the night, the better to di-  
 gest the meat she hath taken: for watching doe  
 engender cruditie and diseases, which cause un-  
 timely births, in stead of faire and goodly children,  
 and chiefly she must avoid sleeping after dinner.  
 But in the morning she may take her ease, as she  
 shall thinke best, yet not running, as some heathen La-

Her Drinke.

Her Steep.

dies da) the day into night, & the night into day.

Exercise.

She may use moderate exercise, but violent motion loosneth the Cotyledons or vessels of the Matrice whereby the child receives his nourishment. They must be forbid riding in Waggonis or Coaches, especially in the three first months: for as upon a small occasion we see the fruits and flowers of trees doe fall (as by some little wind that shakes the tree, or the like,) so many times through a light cause women great with child, in stirring or moving themselves, yea, or but setting their foot awry may be delivered before their time.

Causes of Ab-  
ortment.

It was not without good cause that the *Romans* forbad their Wives to ride in Coaches, the which also ought to be observed in these daies, especially by those who are subject to take hurt, and therefore let them walke gently, taking an especial heed and care to themselves the first three moneths.

Great noyses  
hurtfull.

Shee must shun all great noise and sounds, as of Thunder, Artillery, and great Bells. *Galen* in his booke *de Theriaca*, saith, that many women with childe have died with the very fright they received by a clap of thunder: and when she is afraid of hurting herselfe or falling into travaile, let her be carried in a chaire or litter betweene two strong men, and chiefly two houres before meales: for as a woman may easily loose her burthen the first moneth, because her child (though he be but little) is not yet firmly fastened and tyed to the wombe, so likewise being great or big through his weight, he may fall downe, and come forth, wherefore all violent

leat exercise, and too much labour, is hurtfull and dangerous for her; as also to fret, chide, or laugh immoderately. The fourth, fifth, and sixth moneth she may use more liberty, the seventh and eight she must keepe her selfe still and quiet; but when she is in her ninth moneth, then may shee use more stirring, and exercise. And therefore is it that *Aristotle* in his *Politicks* appointeth, that women with child should not be sedentary, nor live too nicely; but that since God hath blessed them to beare children, they should dayly visit the Temples of the Gods for their exercise.

Violent exercise hurtfull.

Sentence of Aristotle.

The which *Plato* expressly commandeth in his *Common-wealth*, and by a kind of devotion, and religious piety. But *Aristotle* in that place speaketh like a Physician as he sheweth in his booke *de Generatione*. In the Country (saith hee) where women accustome themselves to labour, they are brought abed more easily, and with lesse paine. In brieft, where women exercise themselves, they are sooner delivered: for their exercise consumes the excrements, which idle and slothfull women gather and heape together.

Opinion of Plato.

Women that labour are easily delivered.

In the first foure months shee must likewise abandon *Wine*, for feare of shaking the childe, and bringing downe her courses, which must also be observed in the sixth and eighth moneth, but in the seventh and ninth she may boldly use it, especially toward the end of the ninth moneth, which some are of opinion will help and hasten the delivery.

Venus forbidden.

*Aristotles* of this opinion, (though herein hee contradicts

Ar. Galles opini-  
on.

contradicts the authority of Hippocrates,) The wo-  
man with childe (saith hee) ought not to have the  
company of her husband. But Aristotle and Hippo-  
crates may easily be reconciled; the Philosopher  
meaneth, that they should not embrace their wives  
all the time of their being with childe, but onely  
toward the time of their lying in, thereby to shake  
the childe and make him come the more readily  
forth; for, comming into the world after this act,  
he is commonly enwrapped and compassed with  
lime, which helpeth his comming forth.

to be comming  
forth

Her belly must  
be soluble.

It is also requisite that her belly be loose, not re-  
taining her excrements, and that she have (if it be  
possible) every day the benefit of Nature, which if  
it be not done naturally, it must bee helpt, taking  
every morning some broth of Damaske-Rune.  
Also Apples stewed with Sugar and a little Butter  
is very fit and good. She may use Broth where  
Borage, Buglosse, Purslane, Lettuce, Parience, and  
a little of the herbe Mercury hath beene boyled.  
She may likewise take Suppositaries, for they be not  
too sharpe. Clusters made of a Calves head, or of a  
Sheeps head boyled with Annis-seed and Fennel-  
seed, wherein some coarse Sugar, and boyle of Vio-  
lets is dissolved, are very convenient, using them  
neverthelesse with discretion, leaving out all man-  
ner of ingredients which might cause a flux of the  
belly, for feare of Abortment, or being delivered  
before their time, as Hippocrates saith.

Empers.

Lib. 5. Aph. 34.  
Mulieri gravide  
si alius profusior  
sit, abortio nis pe-  
riculum imminet.  
Lib. 5 Aph. 21.

Notwithstanding the same Hippocrates is of opi-  
nion; that women with childe in cases of necessity  
may

may be purged from the fourth to the seventh month, but before and after those times he admits it not, nay, he forbids it directly, which for all that the Physicians of our time observe not in cases of danger, because the Medicines we use in these days, as Rubarbe, Manna, Cassia, and Tamarinds, are not so violent as those that were used by our Antients, which were Hellebor, Scammony, Turbith, Colocintida, or the like: and we must take especial care of giving them any opening things which may either provoke urine, or their naturall courses; for as the same Author saith, It is impossible for the child to bee healthfull, if the mother have her naturall sicknesse.

A Woman with Child may be purged.

Opening medicines must be avoided. Lib. 5. Aph. 60.

Bloud-letting is forbid them, unlesse it bee very needfull, especially if the child be grown any thing big, because hee hath more need of food and nourishment, then at the beginning when he was little: for take away his sustenance, and he will wax leane and feeble, being oftentimes driven for want thereof to seeke a passage forth. Notwithstanding there are some women so sanguine and full of bloud, that we are forced to take some of it away, lest the child be stifled with the over-great quantity thereof, or when they fall into diseases where it is necessary to open a veine. The fittest time (if it be not in case of necessity) is from the fourth, to the seventh month. I have seene a woman with child who for a Pleurisie was let bloud eleven severall times, and yet stayed her full terme, and was well delivered.

Considerations concerning Bloud-letting.

Now concerning the passions of the minde, a  
D woman

Passions of the minde.

woman with child must bee pleasant and merry, shunning all melancholike and troublesome things that may vex or molest her minde: for as *Aristotle* saith, A woman with child must have a settled and quiet minde, which *Avicen* also counselleth, that those which have conceived, ought to be preserved from all feare, sadnesse, and disquietnesse of mind, without speaking or doing any thing that may offend or vex them; so that discrete women, and such as desire to have children, will not give eare unto lamentable and fearefull tales or stories, nor cast their eies upon pictures or persons which are ugly or deformed, least the imagination imprint on the child the similitude of the said person, or picture, which doing, women shall bee sure to bee well and happily delivered, and that (with the help of God) they shall beare their burthen to the full terme, which shall be sent into the world without much paine, promising them a happy and speedy delivery. To conclude, they must leave off their Basks as soone as they perceive themselves with child, not lacing themselves too straight, or crushing themselves together, for feare least the child be mishapen and crooked, or have not his naturall growth: and their garments must bee rather light and thin, then heavy and cumbersome.

An observati-  
on.  
For great bel-  
licid women.

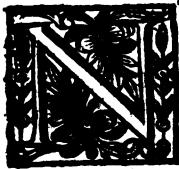
She must take  
heed of lacing  
her selfe too  
hard.

CHAP.



## CHAP. VI.

*How a woman must governe her selfe the nine  
moneths she goeth with child.*



**N**ow I have prescribed what manner of life a woman ought to leade, while she is with child: she may observe (if it please her) this that followeth, though not so necessary, yet commodious and profitable both for the maintaining of her health, and preservation of her beauty. To the end then that her breasts after her delivery be neither too big and puffed up, nor yet hanging downe like bags, and to prevent the danger that might happen unto her by the too great quantity of blood, that is turned into milke, (which may be curdled, and so suppurate and putrefie.) As soone therefore as she knowes her selfe to be with child, (as in the second or third moneth) let her weare a chaine of gold about her necke. Some preferre a chaine of Steele, or else a little gad of Steele put betwene the two breasts, as likewise to put a piece of corke there, and to weare under her arme-pits two little peeces more of the same. This fomentation also is very good.

To preserve  
the breasts.

Take of Periwinkle, Sage, and ground-Ivie, of each a handfull, Hemlocke halfe a small handfull, boyle them in wine and water, and when you have taken it from the fire, put therto a little rose-vineger. And with this decoction warme, bath your breasts

A fomentation

breasts in the morning with a cloth or sponge dipt therein, a quarter of an houre, wiping and drying them afterwards with reasonable warme clothes. The like may be done with the waters of the same hearbs, and about the third or fourth month, when shee feels her selfe quicke, about which time her belly begins to swell and grow big, she must wear a Swathe (made fit for the purpose) to support her belly, being first annointed with this Liniment or Pomade, which shee shall continue till the ninth moneth, to keep her belly from being full of knot-tie and broken vaines, furrowd and wrinkled, making it grow deformed, unseemely, and hanging downe lower than is fit, which hapneth by reason of the great burthen and weight of the child, that stretcheth and enlargeth the skinne thereof, and causeth them to indure great paine in their belly and groine.

What must be done, the third and fourth Moneth.

The Pomade or Liniment approved.

Take of Kids sewer, and the fat of a Sow, of each three ounces, of Capons and Goose-grease, of each an ounce and halfe, cut them small, and melt them in an earthen pot, putting thereto as much water as will suffice, then straine them through a cloth, and wash them in water till they waxe cry white, and have lost their savour. Afterward melt them againe in a double vessell, adding thereto an ounce of the marrow of a Hart, or Stag: then wash it againe with Rosewater, or other sweet smelling water, mingling therewithall (if you thinke fit, or that it will not be hurtfull to the wombe) two or three graines of Muske or Civer.

• Some

# Lib. I. the happy Delivery of Women. 29

Some use this oymnt : Take dogs greafe, and the fat about a sheepes kidney, of each two ounces, Spermaceti one ounce, oyle of sweet Almonds an ounce and a halfe, the fats must bee melted, prepared, and washed as before, then melted agraine with the rest and washed with rose or sweet water.

Another  
liniment.

Some take good store of Sheepes-feet well bruised and broken in pieces, to the number of thirty or forty, and boyle them well in water, then taking off the fat, and marrow that swimmeth on the top, which they wash well in common water, and take thereof two ounces, of Ducks-greafe as much, Spermaceti one ounce, white Waxe sixe drams, melt them altogether in a double vessel, and wash them in the above-named waters.

Another

Some Ladies and Gentlewomen which love not to rub their bellies every morning with any of these liniments, wear thereon a Dog-skin, or some other well prepared and dressed, as followeth; and change it every fiftene dayes; or according as it will last and continue, not taking it off; except it shrivell and grow wrinkled.

Take a Dog-skin, or some other skin ready dressed to make gloves of, wash it often in common water, afterward in Rose-water, and dry it in the shade, and being thus dress and tryed, lay it in fole in these oyles and fats following:

Take of Mesues oymnt of Roses an ounce and halfe, oyle of Saint Johns wort, and of sweet Almonds, of each an ounce, fresh Butter, and Spermaceti, of each halfe an ounce, melt all these together.

The manner to  
prepare is

ther in a double vessell, and let the skin lie and soke in it, three or foure daies, moving & stirring them together daily : then take it forth, and spread it in the aire, and let it lie there two or three daies till it have sok't in all the oile, & become dry: then cut it to the forme & bignes of the belly, and so apply it.

The daintie and curious may use the former liniments and skin : they that have not the meanes to do either, let them ; Take of fresh Butter well wash't in common water, and then in Rose-water, three ounces, oile of sweet Almonds, one ounce, *Spermaceti*, halfe an ounce : and with these melted together, rub their belly.

Another easie  
to be provided.

Observation.

These Ointments must be kept in a gallypot, and covered with Rosewater to keep them from being mustie.

Government  
of the ninth  
Moneth.

When the Woman is come to the ninth Moneth, having beene in good health all the time of her going with child : she must continue the use of the aforesaid Ointments, and must begin to use more exercise than she did before, walking gently before meales the first twelve or fifteene daies: and then afterward it will be good to use stronger exercise.

It will be very profitable for her (especially after the ten or twelve first daies of the ninth moneth be past) to sit in the decoction following, after the manner of a halfe Bath, some quarter, or halfe an hower in the morning, and then being well dried, and laid to bed, let her bee annointed behind, all along the lower part of her backe, and before, from  
the

# Lib. 1. the happy delivery of Women.

the Navell downeward ; and chiefly upon *Or Pubis* and the groine, with the ointment following.

Take of Mallowes *Althea*, with their roots, Motherwort, of each two handfull, white Eilty roots, The Bath. three ounces, Chamomill, and Melilot flowres, of each a good handfull, Linseed, Quince-seed, and Foenigreeke, of each an ounce : Bowle them all in sufficient quantity of running water for the Bath.

Take of Hens fat, three ounces, Duckes fat, an ounce and a halfe, fresh Butter, two ounces, The Oynment. Linseed oyle, an ounce and a halfe : Melt them altogether, then wash them very well in Parietarie, and Mugwort water, adding thereto two ounces of the Muccilage of *Althea* Roots. In which space, let her

take this drinke every morning fasting. Take of Oile of sweet Almonds newly drawn without fire, A Drinke. an ounce, white Wine, halfe an ounce, Parietarie water, one ounce, mingle them together. Some have found good by taking the yelke of an Egge, and drinking a draught of Hypocras after it.

Others take a little Wine and water, wherein Linseed hath been steeped.

Let this or the like order & government be observed, for a Woman that is of a good habit of body, and who in her going with Child, hath not been subject to any sicknesse, or accident of moment : bearing her Children well, & without much paine.

But because there be many, which are troubled with divers accidents, which happen in their Child-bearing, I thought good here, to treat thereof briefly, before I speake of their Delivery.

## CHAP. VII.

Of many infirmities, which trouble Women while they are great with Child.

A Woman must have a care of her Beauty.



It becomes a Woman well at all times, & chiefly in her Child-bearing, and after her delivery, to have a care, as much as shee can possibly, of the preservation of her Beauty :

Health must be preferred.

since there is nothing that sooner decayes & spoileth it, then the often bearing of Children. But as Health is more precious, and recommendable then Beauty: and seeing that a woman with a Child may be troubled and oppressed with many accidents, & infirmities, during the nine moneths she beares her child: it will be therefore very necessary and profitable to seek out the means to free and deliver them therof: For in loosing the Mother, the life of the Child is also hazarded. *Aristotle* in his booke *De generatione Animalium*, is of opinion, that bruit beasts going with young, are not subject to any diseases: and contrariwise, that Women are very often sick.

*Aristotle.*

*Hippocrates.*

*Hippocrates* saith, That they bee pale and wan, to shew that they are subject to many infirmities. In times past when men and women were sold like slaves, if there were any found that were with child she was not warranted for whole and sound by him that sold her, as *Plinius* writes in his second booke, because they were troubled and subject to so many diseases.

*Plinius.*

# Lib. I. *the happy Delivery of Women.*

33

diseases. In the first three or foure moneths such infirmities chiefly happen for many causes. First, because they live (as *Aristotle* saith) for the most part in idleness, and eat ill meats, which are turned into excrements, and breed many obstructions, the fountain and beginning of all diseases: the second is, the great suppression and stopping of blood, whereof they were wont to be purged every Month before their being with child, which runs to the Matrice to be voided, and find that accustomed passage which it had wont to have: but being not able to get forth, and much less to be spent and digested by the child, (which is as yet but little) it returns backe into the veins, & chiefly those which are neare the stomacke; and through the long continuance is there corrupted and changed, to be of a bad quality, whereof proceeds this depraved and disordinate appetite, which the Latines call *Pica*, or *Malicia*: Loathing of meat, Hicke, Vomiting, Paines of the stomacke, flanks, and belly, Ach of the backe, hips, and groin, difficulty of making water, Panting and beating of the heart, with Swooning, the Cough, binding and Flux of the belly, swelling of the thighs and feet, and sometimes Abortment, not being able to beare their children the full time: together with many other accidents; whereof we will speake hereafter, beginning with the *Pica*, which troubleth them oft-  
nest and longest.

Why women with child are sicke.

Divers diseases of women.

CHAP.

## CHAP. VIII.

Of the disordinate longing, called *Pica*.



Commonly say the appetite is depraved, when beyond measure wee covet to eat and drinke too much (in respect of what hunger naturally requireth :) Or when wee desire or long after meates which are unusuall, and offend in quality, and are not drest and prepared as they ought.

*Boulimos.*

Of this depraved Appetite there be divers-sorts. The first is called *Boulimos* by the Greeks, and of the Latins, *Fames vaccina*, & *Appetentia immodica*. When they eat more than is requisite, not being able to satisfie themselves. And if hunger urge them farther, and grow greater, then it is called of the Latins *Appetitus caninus*, or *Fames insatiabilis*, and the party eats till hee be full, even to the throat, that he is constrained to vomit, his stomacke being so overcharged. But then presently he is driven to eat againe, and then to vomit: from whence the Proverbe is taken; *He is returned like a Dogge to his vomit*: The like hapneth for drinking, as for eating: which the Latines call *Sitis immodica*, which is so great, that the tongue cleaves to the roose of the mouth, not being able to eat or speake, except the mouth be first moistned, and the tongue wetted. This accident is very hard, yea, even unsupportable.

*Canina appetentia.*

*Sitis immodica.*



ble to endure, the sicke party taking no other delight but in drinking, and that often, and in great draughts. Men are more subject to this droughth then women: Contrariwise, Women, and chiefly those with child, and such as have not their courses or Wenches that are subject to the Greene sicknesse, are more troubled with this depraved or immoderate appetite, called *Malacia* or *Pica*; having this name given it, either because *Pica* are troubled with this disease, or else for that their feathers be of divers colours, blacke and white, according to the variety of things, which women long after. This sicknesse hapneth when they desire to eat or drinke things, that are wholly contrary to Nature, as eating of raw or burnt flesh, yea, even to long after Mans flesh, Ashes, Coles, old Shoes, Chalke, Wax, Nutshels, Morter, and Lime: as *Fernelius* witnesseth of a man, who being a long time desirous to eat unsiakt lime, at last devoured thereof the bignesse of ones fist, which helpt him, without doing him any harme, either in the stomacke, or guts. Notwithstanding, not long since, the daughter of *M Forger* died, with eating the plastering of wals.

From whence it is called *Pica*.

Story of *Fernelius*.

Sometimes custome, which is a second Nature, make us covet to eat such contrary things, as we desire, and the rather because we have commonly eaten therof in our youth: There is found the contrary hereof in some, who abhorre and loath good meats, which is imputed to the Idiosyncrasie or particular constitution of the person. Others have

observed, that there are such malignant humours sometimes bred in us, that they are turned into poison, and make both these depraved appetites. As it is seen by poisons taken inwardly, & applied outwardly, which make the like effect. The biting of the serpent *Dipsas* doth testify the same, which breedeth an intollerable and unquenchable thirst in him that hath beene wounded by it.

Now therefore leaving all these kinds of vitiated and depraved Appetites, we will onely speak of that wherewith great bellied Women are troubled, which is called *Pica*.

Divers causes  
of Pica.

Some impute the cause of this sicknesse to certaine Crudities, and ill humours, which are contained in the whole habit of the body, and imparted to the mouth, or orifice of the stomacke. But the fountein opinion is, that the sides and tunicles of the stomacke, and orifice thereof, are infected, and stuffed with divers excrements, and ill humours; and according to the quality they have, the Woman which child, longeth after the like. As if Melancholy abound, not burnt or adust; she desireth after sharper things, as Vineger, Crones, and Oreniges: if the Melancholie be adust, she desireth Coles, Asires, and plattering: if the humour bee salt, she coveteth salt meates, and so of the rest. And surely it oftentimes happens, that they long for the like things as are in their stomackes. This maligne and bad humour, is ingendred (as wee have said) through the retention of the naturall Courtes in women with Child, which flow back into the stomacke. In some

Wherefore  
they desire  
divers things.

it.

Lib. I. the happy Delivery of Women. 37

it beginneth the first weeks, yea, the very first day, in others the thirtieth or fortieth day, and continues even till the fourth moneth, and then ceaseth: which commeth so to passe, because the child is is growne bigger, and having need of more Nourishment, draws to him a greater quantity of bloud the which he consumes: and so by consequent, it returnes backe no more into the stomacke. Besides also, this humour hath bene much spent, and voided, by the often vomitings which Women have during the first moneths. And also because the Childs haire is bred, and growne great, which some hold to bee partly a cause of this sicknesse. *Plinie* writes, That Women with Child, feele themselves worse, when their Childs haire begins to come, and chiefly about the new of the Moone.

The beginning of the Pica.

The breeding of the haire causeth the Pica.

Now that we may preserve them from this infirmity, or at least diminish it as much as may bee: she must chiefly use meats that breed good iuice; & that in little quantity, increasing it neverthelesse, as her bignesse augmenteth, & the child groweth: which at length waxing stronger and greater, will consume part of this great quantity of bloud, and the rest may bee put into the membranes which wrap and infold the child, & to the masse of bloud which is called the after-burthen, which is as it were the liver of the Matrice.

Their diet in Pica.

what should be observed

Now concerning their meat and drinke: Considering that they that are sicke of this disease, and so infinitely distressed, that oftentimes they doe even loath and abhorre good meats: therefore wee must

Meats fit for  
those that  
have the Pica.

set an edge (as it were) on their appetite, varying their meats in as many fashions as may be possible, thereby to make them the more pleasing and desirable.

Olives and Capers, as likewise fallades a little parboyled, are very good for them.

All meats that are either too fat, or too sweeter, be naught, because they stirre up a desire of vomiting.

For their sauces : they may use Veriuiice, Orringes, Citrons, Pomegranats, and good Rose vineger, all very moderately taken.

*Avicen.*

*Avicen* commendeth tosted cheese, and Amylum dried : which *Actius* and *Oribasius* doe allow, and especially to those that desire to eat earth, and plastering of walls, or the like. *Paulus Aegineta* allowes them the use of mustard, pepper, & cloues to make sauce thereof, for the stirring up of their appetite, and to help to digest the crudities contained within the stomacke : after meales shee may eat bak't quinces, and rosted filberts. For her drink, she must use good claret wine, well allayed : but if shee long for white, you may give her leave to drinke some, so that it have a little astringtion.

Much drinking  
is naught in the  
Pica.

True it is, that the overgreat quantity of drinke is hurtfull for her, by reason of the great washing which it might make in her stomacke : shee may take every morning a draught of Wormewood-wine, or a little strong Hydromel, with a tost of bread. The use of these Lozenges is much commended.

*Rc Amyl:*

Rc. *Amyg. pariss. ꝑ. 3i. Caryoph. Nucis Mosch. an. ʒs.* Lozchges.  
*spec. Diarhod. abbat. ʒi. sacchar. in aq. Rosar.*  
*& Absynth. dissolut. ʒij. fiant tabellæ ponderis ʒj.*  
*Capiat unam singulis auroris & superbibat tantil-*  
*lum vini.*

The Ancients, as *Paulus* and *Oribasius*, exceedingly commend the decoction of Polypody, and Annis-seed, with Sugar of Roses. They may use gentle fomentations to their stomacks, made of Wormwood, Balauſtia, Cummin, Cytisus, and Fennell-seed, wherwith likewise may be made Cataplasmes for the same use. For these medicines will comfort and strengthen the concoctive facultie of the stomacke, the better to digest the meat; the retentive, to retaine and keepe that it hath received; the expulsive, to thrust that forth which troubleth the stomacke; and the appetite, to covet and long for meat.

This ointment is also very fit and profitable.

Rc. *Ol. Nardin. Cydonior. an. ʒs. Pul. Caryoph. Mastich. an. ʒj. Cruci gr. iij. Cere parum. fiat* Liniment.  
*litus pro stomacho, præmissosorum.*

As also this that followeth.

Rc. *Ol. Mastich. Cydonior. an. ʒj. Ol. Nardin. ʒss. Anodori.*  
*Coral. rub. Caryophil. Mentib. Calam. Aro-*  
*mat. Nucis Mosch. an. ʒs. Cere q. s. ad formam*  
*Cerasi.*

Rc. *Cortic. Citri ʒj. fol. Meliss. Absynth. an. M.ij.* A Cataplasme.  
*Coquantur in aq. com. pistentur & passentur,*  
*addendo olei Nard. & Mastich. an. ʒi. fiat*  
*Cataplasma.*

They,

They may use *Galen's Cerote* for the stomacke, or that of *Aetius* made with Quinces, Saffron, and a little oyle of Spikenard.

Discretion in  
purging.

Concerning generall purgations, which may evacuate downward part of this superfluity, they must not bee administred when a woman is young with childe, but with very great care, and good advice, not using any strong purgers. But if there be need, and that the disease ceaseth not by light Medicines, then may be given a little infusion of *Rubarbe*, and a gentle decoction of *Sene* taking the advice of the learned Physitian. And therefore we must onely have regard to their vomiting, which at these times doth commonly molest and trouble them, taking heed of staying it, except it be immoderate (as *Avicenna* saith) or too violent. For other-

*Avicenna's* precept

- ways it helpeth to cure this disease, evacuating part of those ill humours whereby it is nourished and increased. And if we perceive she hath a desire to vomit, and that the expulsive faculty be not strong enough to helpe it, let her take a little *Hydromell* warme; and if the matter in the stomacke be tough and clammy, adde thereto a little *Vinegar*, the better to attenuate and cut it. I have bene the longer in this Chapter, because it is an accident that doth much annoy women with childe; thereby the better to instruct the young Chirurgeon, when there is no Physitian neare at hand.

CHAP.

... Chap: IX.

Of Distaste, fullness and Hicket.



Most women, as soone, as they are with child, be so distated, and doe so loath and abhorre meat, that they cannot endure either to eat, see, or sit. It is, yea, & some are sicke even with the very hearing of it named which makes them goe oftentimes two or three daies without any desire to eat. This distaste happeneth upon the same reason wee gave before of the depraved appetite, because the stomacke is filled and stuffed with divers extremities (that cloy a great bellyd woman) which by little and little are there gathered together, by the flowing backe of the courses that be stopped (which cannot be put forth, much lesse consumed by the little one) and so come into the stomacke, and fill it.

The Cause.

But when these corrupted and ill humours abide longer in the stomacke, there happens another accident, commonly called the Hicket, or Yeaxing, which is a violent & convulsive motion of the stomacke, which seemeth to discharge it selfe of those bad humours, which are contained in the capacity and membranes therof: and offend either in quantity, or quality, or both together. From hence comes it that the stomacke willing to put them forth, casts up withall the meat and food, the woman hath taken: to the preiudice of herselfe, (which

The Hicket.

Discommoditie of the Hicket.

F cannot

cannot keepe any thing for her owne sustenance) and of the Child, who cannot find sufficient blood to nourish him: which at length makes them both weake, and causeth the Mother either to be delivered before her time, or else to breed a faint and feeble Child, and oftentimes one that will be sickly all his life time.

Cure.

For the remedying of this queasinesse, wee must have recourse to those medicines, written in the Chapter of depraved *Appetite*; Both for the dyet and remedies. And touching the Hicket, when it comes through emptinesse, or want of eating; then the woman must nourish herselfe, taking often good meate, and in small quantity; as yelkes of eggs, cullis, veale, broth, hennes, and chicken: and let her belly bee annointed with oyle of sweet Almonds, and Violets: If the cause proceed of any sharp or biting humour, it must be drawne and purged downward gently, as we have said already: or else by vomit, without much straining, Cow milke, and the milke of an Asse are very much commended, as also the use of Syrops of Violets, and Nenuphar are very profitable.

Straining bad  
for womch  
with child.

The Hicket may also come of some inflammation that is in the Spleene, Liver, or other bowels neere the stomacke, and so is impart to it: this hapning, it will be very necessary to let her blood: and that she use meats which moderately coole: as also medicines of the same nature, both inwardly and outwardly: considering thereof with the Physicians.



CHAP. X.

Of the Vomiting which happens to women with childe.



Here be some women, who as soone as they be with child, yea, the very first dayes are subject to Vomit: casting up store of water and slime by the mouth: and this vomiting continueth even till they are quicke with childe: and with some it remaineth all the time of their going: which I saw happen unto a great Lady of this Kingdome, who from the second day after she had conceived, vomited; and affirmed constantly that she was with childe.

Women with child vomit often.

When this Vomiting happeneth, it must not be stayed suddenly, if so be it continue gently, and without violence: for being stopped, there is such store of humours heaped and gathered together in their stomacks, that they are ready to be stifled, or staft up; which being by little and little cast up without violence, they are much eased: for by this evacuation of noysome excrements, the first region of the belly fees it selfe free, discharged, and unburthened of many long and grievous paines. The cause of this accident proceeds commonly of the abundance of humours gathered together in the stomacke: or else of some sharpe and biting humour, that doth stir and provoke it, and chiefly the upper Orifice thereof: as well by reason of the ill meats they eat, and that in great quantity, as also because they fill themselves too much with good meat, which doth putrifie and corrupt; (the natu-

Vomiting' must not be stopt on the sudden.

Cause.

should proove distasteful, let them use Codigniack or some Citron pill condited. They may likewise take some digestive powder after meales.

Let there bee provided some such fomentation for their stomacke, as this.

Fomentation.

*Rc. Mentæ Absinthii, rosar. rub. an. m. s. balanst. ʒ ii. gariophilor. & santalor. an. ʒ s. cornis cidoniorum ʒ i. corticis citri. ʒ i. fiat decoct. in vino castero pro fota.*

Then let them have this ointment :

Liniment.

*Rc. Olei mastich. & cidonior an. ʒ s. olei de absinthio ʒ ii. pulveris coralli rub. & gariophil. an. ʒ i. crociparum. fiat litus, admoveatur pramisso fota.*

This Emplaster is very fit: which must be applied after the ointment, and remain there a good space.

Emplaster.

*Rc. Cruste panis assati ʒ iiiij. macerent. in vino rubro & succo cidonior. pul. Rosar. rub. & absinthii an. ʒ i. ligni Aloes & Gariophilor. an. ʒ s. pul. coralli rubri. ʒ iiiij. Olei de Absinthio ʒ j. fiat Cataplasma.*

If all these forenamed Medicines helpe not the patient, Master Mercator doth set downe a remedy very easie to be practised, and of incredible vertue (as he saith) which cannot bring (having often tried it) any danger: nor cause the woman to be delivered out of her time: which is to let her bloud in the Salvatella of the right hand.

An approved  
Medicine.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Of the paine of the stomacke, flanks, and belly, which happens to a woman with childe.



Here is great store of grosse winds bred not onely in the stomacke, and guts, but also about the Liver, Splene, Mesenterium, and Navell, by meanes of a weak and feeble heat, which is not able wholly to consume, and scatter them: from whence proceedeth a great distention of the belly, and other parts neere and chiefly about the Navell: which in some oftentimes stands out, and is as big, as a goose egge. The which winds being thus inclosed, and not having free passage, cause such intolerable paine, that even the breathing is thereby hindered, and pulse almost lost, which at length might cause the woman to be delivered.

Causes of wind.

Sometimes also the wind is shut up within the wombe: for I have knowne some women, that have voided them with such a sound, & noise, as though it had beene, by the fundament; and this must be remedied after this sort.

Wind inclosed in the wombe.

First shee must shunt all manner of moist, and windy meats, & live after the order before prescribed. If it be needfull to purge her; let it be done, as is already set down. Then let there be applyed some dry fomentations to the place affected, as this.

Dyets

*Rx star camo. & anethi an. m. ij. rosar. rub. p. ij. se- Quills  
wis*

*minis annisi & fenicul. an. ʒ ii. baccar. lauri ʒ i. fiat omnium pulvis grossus, de quibus fiant sacculi duo irrorati cum vino rub. & tepide admoneantur parti affecta.*

The same quilts may be boyled in wine, and fomentations made of the said wine with soft sponges. But you must observe, that the too long use of moist fomentations, oyles, and fats is forbidden women with child, for feare least by too much moisture, and oyliness, the ligaments and vessels of the matrice bee made too loose and soft: which at length may cause the woman to abort. Apply unto her belly and to the parts pained, in forme of a Pullesse this that followeth,

*Re Vitell. ovorum n. iii. pulvis annisi, & feniculi dulcis an. ʒ s. pul. absinthii. ʒ s. cum oleo anethino & camomil. q. s. fiat pricatum.*

Pullesse.

Let them chaw Fennil, or Anniseed, or a little Cinamon: and take a tost dipt in Hippocras. Some have told mee, that the distilled water of Citron Pills, drunke, is very singular good. And it will not beamisse, sometimes to take a spoonefull, or two of this water.

*Re Aquæ vitæ ʒ s. cinamo. ʒ i. macerent. spatio xiiii. hor. deinde affunde aquæ rosar. ʒ ii. sacchari candidi ʒ s. fiat aqua claretæ, capiat coeleat unum.*

A Claret water.

If yee perceive that shee is much troubled with paine, you may give her a Clister: as this.

*Re Folior. matric. matrica. an. m. i. flor. camom. melilori et succinidi an. m. ii. seminis annisi & fœnic. an. ʒ iij. bulliant in invocapit. vervec. vel*

A Clister.

*vel vituli. de quo accipe quart. iiij. in quibus  
dissolve Ol. Aneth. Chamemel. an. ℥ ij. Sacchar.  
rub. ℥ j. s. Butyr. recent. ℥ j. Vitell. duor. ovor.  
fiat Clyster.*

Neverthelesse I am of opinion (if it may be Admonitions  
done possibly) that they should abstaine from Cly-  
sters : because I have seene women sometimes,  
through as small a Clyster as this, fall into great tor-  
ments, yea, and even into throwes, nature being  
thereto prepared and ready : which turned to the  
Chirurgions disgrace. Wherefore let her use these  
Lozenges following.

Rx. *Sem. Anis. fenic. dulc. an. ʒ ss. Nucis Mosch. Lozenges  
ʒ i. spec. Diacumin. Diarrhod. Abb. s. ana ʒ ss.  
sacchar. in aq. Cinamom. dissolut. ℥ ij. fiant ta-  
bule, capiat unam, singulis auroris.*

She may use Sugar of Roses, which to every  
ounce hath two or three drops of the oile of Annis-  
seed added to it.

CHAP. XII.

*Of the paines of the Backe, Hips, and Groine, with  
difficulty of mingling water, that happens  
unto Women with childe.*



Here bee some Women which beare  
their children high, and (as they say)  
within their stomacke ; so that they are  
nimble either in going or stirring ;  
without being let or hindred thereby at all. Others  
G carry

The divers situation of the childe.

carry them very low, having their belly standing very much out, which brings them very much inconvenience: as paine of the Hips and Groine, and then they complaine, as if those parts, and their belly were rent and torne in peeces. Contrariwise, there be others that hide their childe within their raines, and beare it very backward, which causeth them to have exceeding great paine in their backs. In the two latter cases we had need to helpe them; for as *Hippocrates* saith; when women with childe are troubled with great paine in their backe and legs, then are they in danger to be delivered before their time. The like may be also said of them that have much paine in their belly or groine.

*Hippocrates.*

Cause of these paines.

These paines commonly do rather proceed from the heaviness of the child, than of any quantity of humours which abound in the body. For at that time, the wombe being great, thicke, and full, by reason of the childe which is big and large, and of the bed, or after-burthen, & oftentimes filled with great store of water; on which side soever the wombe resteth, it drawes the ligaments and bonds with it, that hold and fasten it to the foresaid parts: and by the force of this dilation and stretching, doth cause and provoke paines in the backe, hips, and groine: as well by reason they are tied therto; as likewise for the continuity of those neighbouring parts which touch them. For the remedying whereof, the woman must keepe herselfe still and quiet without much stirring or shaking: she must eat little and often, and of meats that be light, and easie

The Cure.

caise of digestion: for the stomacke being full, doth presse the body of the Matrice, and thrusts it downward. Therefore she must weare Swathes, which may helpe to support, and keepe up her belly: that by such a rest & swathing, the ligaments, which are lengthened, and stretched, may bee somewhat brought backe to their proper places: which must be confirmed and strengthened by these meanes.

All the bottome of her backe, and raines must be annointed with *Vnguentum Comitisse*, or else this ointment.

*Rx Ol. Mastich. Cidonior. an. ℥j. ol. Myrtil. ℥℞. Corall. rub. terra Sigillat. an. ℥ss. Vnguent. Comitiss. ℥ss. liquefiant omnia ut artis est, & fiat linimentum.*

Oyntment.

If the woman with child feel any coldnesse (as it happens to some, by reason of their cold tempera- ture) which makes them shiver, and quake: let there be added to the former ointment, *Ol. Costia. & A- net. h. an. ℥℞.*

But if shee find any heat there, or burning, then applie some ointment, that hath vertue to comfort and coole.

*Rx Ol. Myrtil. Rosar. an. ℥j. ss. vng. Rosat. Mes. ℥j. vng. Refriger. Galen. ℥ss. Pulver. Corall. rub. Bol. Armen. an. ℥i. succi Aurant. ℥ii. misce. fiat linimentum.*

A good ointment.

Likewise it may chance, through the waigh- tinesse of the wombe, which resteth in the bottome, that the woman with child cannot make water; which happing, she herselfe, with both hands must

A good ob- servation.

lift up the bottome of her belly; by meanes whereof shee shall hinder the body of the wombe from pressing and crushing the bladder, and especially the necke thereof, which is loaded and oppressed with the said wombe. You may apply below some bathing or fomentation, made with the leaves of Mallowes, Althæa, Cresses, and Parietary, with a little Lin-seed, to make the passage more loose, soft, and easie to be enlarged or widened.

### CHAP. XIII.

*Of the panting and beating of the heart: As also of Swooning, which happen unto women with childe.*



As there be divers winds and vapours that are shut up and inclosed in the neather belly of a woman with child; which procure great paines in her hips, backe, and groine; for the reasons before rehearsed: So likewise are there the like vapours that arise from the wombe, and other parts neare, which are inclosed in the Arteries, and by them are carried and imparted to the heart, which cause a panting and beating: and the heart feeling it selfe offended and oppressed by the said vapours, endevoureth by his motion to expell and drive them away farre from it. selfe, (Nature having given to every part some particular meanes whereby to repell and thrust backe that which doth

Cause of the trembling of the heart.

The wisdom of nature in all her works.



# Lib. I. the happy Delivery of Women.

doth annoy or molest it. As the braine by sneezing; the Lungs by coughing; and the stomacke by vomiting.) But because this accident is oftentimes the fore-runner of a Syncope or Swooning, therefore will it be needfull to have a care thereof, it being easie to bee knowne, both by the relation of the party, who finds her heart beat, as also by feeling the breast upon the region of the heart with ones hand, with which this motion listeth up the ribs, and the hand that is laid thereon, yea, some women have such a beating, that it makes even the ribs stand out of their place. For remedy whereof such vapours must bee kept from seizing upon the heart, which may be done by well fencing of it, both within, and without.

If then you perceive that the woman doe abound with any ill humours, from whence these vapours may partly arise: shee must be purged (as before) and let blood, according as the accidents doe require, and the ancients doe appoint, which must be done in small quantity, and that not all at once; but rather at many times by little and little. For according to *Galen*; There is no remedy that more hinders and alters the course of blood and noysome vapours from piercing and assailing the heart, then letting of blood doth.

How a woman  
with child must  
be let blood.

Let her take every morning one of these Lozenges, which are very proper.

Rc. Pulver. *Latitiae Galeni* & de gemmis an. ʒi. pul. lapid. Bezoard. & ossis de corde Cervi. an. ʒs. confect. de *Hiacintho* ʒs. sacchar. cum aqua scordii  
G 3 Lozenges  
dissol.

*Diffolati ℥ii. fiant tabella pond. ℥ii. sumat unam  
singulis diebus mane & sero cubitura.*

Instead thereof she may use this opiate:

Opiate.

*R̄c. conserve bugloss. & borag. an. ℥s. conserve radice  
scorzoneræ ℥. vi. corti. citrionditi ℥iii. ther. veter.*

*℞i. pul. elct̄ uer. diamarg. frigid̄i ℞s. fiat opiata capi  
at singulis diebus mane & sero ℥i. ut dictum est.*

The Claret water before described is very excellent good, some doe use the water of Orringe flowers.

The heart must  
be guarded.


The heart must bee outwardly fortified with Quilts, Fomentations, Epithemes & Cataplasmes, applied to the region therof, made with the aforesaid ingredient. Take for the Epitheme or fomentation, the waters of Borage, Bugloss, Balme, & of Oringe flowers, Cardus Benedictus, Roses and of Scordium, adding thereto Saunders, Angelica seed: Cordiall floures and the like.

The wombe  
desireth good  
smels.

And because that the heart and matrice, are delighted with pleasant odors, let those that are troubled with this disease use good smels; sweet, but neither strong nor piercing.

## CHAP. XIII.

### Of the Cough.

 One of the most grievous, and almost insupportable accidents, that can happen to a woman with child, is the Cough: the which being violent oftentimes causeth head-

# Lib. 1. the happy delivery of Women.

head-ach, paine of the sides, flanks and belly, vomiting & watching, the woman not being able to sleepe or take any rest, for the great concussion and agitation which is made through the whole body, which oftentimes puts the woman in danger to be delivered before her ordinary time.

Inconveniencies of the cough.

For the most part it proceedeth of some sharpe and biting vapours, which arise from the neather parts, or else by the distillation of some thinn humour that comes from the braine, and falleth trickling upon the Trachea Arteria, or wind-pipe, & the lungs, which provokes them to cough, & yet bringing up little or nothing; the distillation may also be of some thicker humour, which falleth downe upon the said parts.

Cause.

Therefore wee must have respect to the antecedent cause, by hindering such vapours and humors from breeding, then staying those which may flow or fall down: if there be any cause or matter joynd with it, already fallen and impacted in the lungs and breast, then must it be brought up by spitting.

Cure.

For the helping hereof, they must avoid all salt and spiced meats, as also those that are sharpe and biting, especially if it bee caused by some vapours or distillation of a thinn or ferous humour.

Diet.

Concerning general Medicines: if it be accompanied with a fever, or some great heat, it will not be amisse to draw a little blood, then (the better to turne the course of the distillation:) which causeth the cough to apply cupping-glasses upon the shoulders, with some light scarification. And if the cough should

Generall Medicines.

Cautery.

should be of so long continuance, I would counsell you to lay a cautery in the hollownesse of the nape of the neck: which I have practised with good successe, but it must not be done before you have tried the Medicines following, and when the cough is great and violent.

Frictions.

The rubbing of the armes, shoulders, and backe must not be omitted, as also when the haire is shaven away, to apply *Emplastrum de Betonica*, upon the head, to stay the Rheume.

If the Cough be dry, proceeding from some thin and sharp humour or vapour, it must be thickned; contrariwise if the humour be tough and thicke, it must be cut and attenuated by concocting both, and therefore in this case, the use of Medicines that do dull the sense thereof, are very profitable to mitigate violent Coughs: of which kinde are these that follow. If the humour be thin and sharpe, this Julep taken twice or thrice is very fit.

Julep.

℞. *Syrup. Rosarum siccar. & de jujubis an. ʒ vi syrupi de nenaph. ʒ s. aqua cardui & ungula cabalina an. ʒ ii. s. fiat Julep. reiteretur ter quaterve ut artis est.*

If the humour be slimie, thicke and tough, she may use this Julep.

Another.

℞. *Syrup. capill. veneris & de liquirit. an. ʒ vi. oxy-melit. simplic. ʒ s. aqua betonica, & ungu. cabal. an. ʒ i. s. fiat Julep. reiteretur ut supra.*

Let them often hold in their mouth Sugar-candy especially that which gathers about the pot side, wherein sirrup of Violets, or the like, hath bin put.

Let

**Lib. 1. the happy deliuey of Women.**

Let them use Trochiscs, iuice of Licorise, & some time chew a peece of Licorise in their mouth. The Lozenges of *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, *Diuris simplex*, and sugar of Roses, are very good. The use of Lohocs is very distastfull, but in steed thereof, let them use sirup of *Iaiibes*, of dryed Roses, and a little *diacodium* mingled together, I have seene this medicine doe much good, especially when the cough is great, and that they feele some excoriation, and roughnesse in the throat.

℞ olei amigd. dulc. sine igee recent. extracti ℥. i. s. sacchari candi subtilit. pulueris. ℥. s. macag. seminis psillii. *Cydoniorum* *apocryphae* *betonicae* *extracti* *℥. ii.* *miscemini diligenter.*

A medicine to take away the roughnesse of the throat.

Let them take of this medicine in a spoone, swallowing it down very gently, that so some of it may the better slide downe the sides of the windpipe.

It will be very fit to rub their breast all over with fresh butter, or oyle of sweet Almonds: and if they finde any heat, let them use oyle of Violets washed with Barly water well boyled.

And because there is nothing that stayeth distillations better then sleepe: and that those who have the cough sleepe little, it will be very good to make the patient sleepe, without giving any violent sleeping medicine, this Julip may bee given very safely.

Does you know how to rub your breast?

Sleeping stoppeth fluxes.

℞ Sirupi. de Iaiibus, violati & diacadii sine speciebus. *℥. s.* cum decocto portulacae, lactucae, boraginis, betonicae & trinum flor. cordial. fiat potus, capiat hora somni.

Drinke to stay the Rheume.

This remedy procureth sleep, and so by consequence

H

quener sayeth the Rhome. If you have any good *Lindamum*, you may give safely three or foure grains thereof; which I have soone prafticed with prosperous successe.

CHAP. XV.

*Of Costivenesse, whereby women with child are troubled:*



Among many other accidents wherewith women with child are troubled, there are two, the one contrary to the other whereunto they bee much subject: that is, either they are bound, and cannot goe to the stoole but with much inconvenience, and very seldome: or else they are always loose and subject to the fluxe. Both may put the women in danger of miscarrying. For when she is bound, with much straying, and that violently to unburthen nature; the ligaments may be loosened, or some veine opened: and cause stase of bloud which may make her fall into travaile, and therefore it is fit to provide for it.

Contrary accidents in women with child

Cause of Costivenesse.

The retention of the excrements, and costiveness of the belly, may happen either because they have used to be so naturally, or by alteration and change of yeares, for as *Hippocrates* saith, they who have their belly moist in their youth, in their age will have it hard and dry; and so contrariwise. This accident happens to others, because the guts are not provoked & stirred up by the clister of nature (which

is

is the gall) that they may expell and thrust forth their excrements. There might be alleged many more reasons; which at this time I will leave to speake of; and onely frame my selfe to that which most commonly is the cause of it in women with childe; which is referred to two points, either because the guts are pressed by the moovings of the wombe, which is too full, and being placed upon them; (and chiefly upon the great gurg) crushes and thrusts them one against another, in such sort, that they have no means to enlarge and dilate themselves, thereby to void the excrements contained within them. The other is because the guts, and the excrements within them are commonly very hard and dried in women with childe, through the great heat that is in the intrailes, which makes them that they cannot easily flow. The sedentary life also that women lead, is cause that their excrements are stayed, and gather themselves together by little and little, and at length stop up the passage. This accident brings unto them flushings in the face, head-ach, beating of the Arteries, yea, and oftentimes an Ague.

Other causes of Costiveness

For the curing of this disease, a good order in Diet is very needfull; using meats that doe moisten, and keepe the guts supple and slippery, and withall soften the excrements; which must be done with very great discretion: for too much moisture may at length over-much relax the ligaments of the wombe, and of the childe, and thereby hasten the delivery.

Cure.

Broths to  
loosen the  
belly.

Notwithstanding a woman with child being too  
costive, may use tender meats, as Veale, where-  
with they may make Broths, with Lettuce, Purs-  
lane, Sorrell, Spinach, Beers, Buglosse, Violet  
leaver, and sometimes a little of the herbe called  
Mercury. Let them use Ptunes, and Baked Apples.  
Some take two or three gulps of fresh water before  
their meales: but let them use gentle exercise, to  
make their excrement follow the more freely. It  
is also very fit for a woman with childe, in the mor-  
ning when she riseth, and at night when she goeth  
to bed, to make proffer to unburthen nature, with-  
out straining her selfe but very gently. If for all  
this her belly will not be correspondent, it will not  
be amisse to give her Clysters.

Clyster.

*R. Maku. Bismal. Parietar. Matric. an. m. ij. flor.  
Chamem. Melilot. an. p. ij. Sem. Anisi, Fenicul.  
an. ʒ. ij. coquantur in jure pulli vel capiti. ver-  
vec. aut vituli in colatur. ad quart. iij. dissolve  
Sacch. albi, Olei Violat. Butyr. recent. an. ʒ. ij. S.  
vitell. ovor. numero ij. fiat Clyster.*

This may be given at twice.

She may also take some Broth wherein is put a  
spoonfull or two of the water, or wine of Seny,  
which is made after this manner:

Take halfe an ounce of Seny well cleaned, six  
Cloves bruised, put them into a dish, and powre  
upon them halfe a pint of wine, or water ready to  
boyle, and so let them soake all night, and in the  
morning take two or three spoonfull, which will  
be

Seny wine.



# Lib. I. the happy deliverie of Women.

61

be put into your Broth : keeping the rest to serve you afterward at your need.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of the Flux or loosnesse of the belly, which troubleth women with childe.*



The Easke, in what manner soever it be, doth put the woman in danger of coming before her time : and that for divers reasons. First, because thereby the meat they take for their nourishment is voided too soone, which should have staid and bin turned into bloud, for the nourishing and sustaining both of the Mother and the childe. And therefore they both remaine weake and feable, which compelleth the childe to come forth, and seeke for food else where. For as the Proverb saith; *Hunger makes the Wolfe come forth of the wood.* Beside, the Mother is so troubled with rising out of her bed, as also with much straining her selfe, (especially if it bee the bloody flux) that the wombe oftentimes is overturned and relaxed : and causeth the childe to bee cast forth of his place, by reason of the moistnesse which runneth continually along the great gut, upon which the wombe is placed.

Flux of the belly dangerous.

Proverb.

Women with great bellies are commonly subject thereto, because of the meats they eat, which are of ill juyce : whereby the stomach being weakened,

ned, and not able to concoct them, the expulsive faculty is compeld to thrust them downward, halfe concocted and indigested : otherwise they are corrupted, and turned into some maligne, sharpe, and biting humours : as into fretting choller, rotten flegme, or melancholy, which doe corrode and stir up the bowels, and cause the flux of the belly.

## The Cure.

Concerning the cure of it, many considerations must be had. And first, it will be very fit to know of what kinde the flux is, and what may be the causes thereof. Now, all Fluxes of the belly must needs be one of these three ; either *Diarrhea*, *Lienteria*, or *Dysenteria* : which soever it be of these, if it proceed of a maligne and putride humour, it must not be suddenly stopped by astringent Medicines, lest it happen unto the woman with childe, as it did unto *Strymia*, (as *Hippocrates* saith) who having a flux of the belly suddenly stopt, was delivered in the fourth moneth.

## A worthy Story.

## How to proceed therein.

Now to know what kinde of flux it may be, the stools will shew and testifie. If it be not violent, it may bee suffered to flow gently, and for a good while, not omitting in the meane time the use of some Clysters, that may asswage the paine, if there be any. But if it continue, & that it be bred of some sharpe and biting humours, which gnaw the guts, and provoke the expulsive faculty, (of which kind are fretting and biting choller, or salt flegme) and that the Mother seeme to grow weake and faint : then must it be remedied with as much speed and care as may be : otherwise the woman having di- vers

vers pangs, and provocations, is in danger to bee delivered. Wherefore the humor offending must be purged with Rubarb, compound frup of Cichorie, and the like which have bene already prescribed in the former Chapters: as also the like humours hindered from breeding. And therefore Her Diet. shee must abstaine from all unwholesome meates, especially if the cause thereof proceed from thence Besides, the said humours must bee allayed and made more gentle, that they may not any more provoke or stir up the expulsive vertue: the which may bee easily done by a good dyer, which shall breed as little choller, or other bad humours, as may be: using broths made with Purcelane, Sorrell, Buglosse, and the cold seeds, adding thereto a little Rife, or French Barly. The use of new laid Egges is much commended, which must bee poched in water: Her meat must bee rather rost then boiled: All spices are to be eschewed. Let her drinke be red Wine, or steeled water, wherin a piece of bread hath bene soaked!

This drinke is very fit, and pleasant.

Take of French Barly dried in a pan, a handfull, A Drinke. fennill-seed, Coriander-seed, and Licorise, of each two drams, boile them in a quart of water, adding thereto an ounce of Berberis or two ounces of the iuice of Pomgranates. A little before meales let her eate a slice of Marmalade.

And seeing there often happens paine and gripings together with pangs and throwes because the guts are moved and provoked: therefore they must

must be washed, and the paine mitigated with this Clyster.

Clyster.

Rx *Hord. integ. m. i. chamamel. melilot. an. m. s. Plantag. Borag. Buglos. an. m. i. Bulliant. in iure capot. uervec. aut uinli de quo cape quart. iiii. in quibus dissolue ol. violar. ℥ iiii. vitell. duor. or. or. sacchar. rub. ℥ i. fiat clyster.*

But if the woman be further molested with gripings, and that she have great and often provocations: then this Clyster will be very fit for her.

Another Clyster.

Rx *Plantag. Burs. Pastor. Portulac. an. m. s. flor. Chamamel. melilot. hord. integ. an. p. 1. sem. anisi ℥ s. Bulliant in iure pulli gallinacei. de quo accipe qu. iiii. seui cap. rill. ℥ i. s. olei omphac. ℥ iij. vitell. unius ovi cum alb. sacchar. rub. ℥ i. misceantur, & fiat clyster.*

Clysters that are made onely with oyle of Violets and the broth of a sheepe, or calves head be singular good.

If the disease doe increase and the paines grow more violent, then we must proceed even to stupifying or Narcoticke medicines, as *Laudanum*, or *Pilula de Cimoglossa*, which may be given either by the mouth or in a Clyster, wherein the Physitians counsell must be asked.

I have seene given with good successe one or two drams of new Triacle dissolved in a clyster.

It will be very fit to annoint the bottome of her belly, and about the *os sacrum* with this ointment.

Ointment.

Rx *Ol. Rosar. Myrtli. an. ℥ i. s. olei Mastich. ℥ i. vitell. duor.*

*dec. ovor. Cret. Dr. misce omnia final. & fiat li-  
tus propterea, & affe sacra.*  
They may likewise use *Fraguetum Rosatum*.  
*Mesur.*  
The paine still continuing with pangs & chrowes;  
let there be made for her this suffumigation.

Suffumigation.

*R. Folior. Matric. plantag. burfa pastor. verbaſci Ar-  
rogloſſia an. m. j. roſar. rub. flor. Cham. & Mattilor.  
Balaſtiorum an. m. s. coquantur in equid partibus  
vini auſteri & aqua Chalyb. & fiat in ſeſſio, & ubi  
per dimidia horam ſe continet.*

Then (ſhee being well dried) annoint all the  
bottom of her belly, and about *Os ſorum*; with  
this ointment.

*R. ſevi caprilli, & Vervec. an. ℥s. Olei Roſati & Ma-  
ſſich. an. ℥ ij. s. Olei Cydonior. ℥ j. liqueſ. ſimul ad-  
dendo pul. Roſar. rub. verbaſci & Myrtil. an. ℥s.  
pul. terre ſigillate, & Coralli rub. ℥. ij. cer. xq. ſ.  
ſiat litus.*

Liniment.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the ſwelling of the legges and thighs which hap-  
peth unto women with childe.



**I**N thoſe women which were wont to  
have great quantity of naturall purga-  
tions, before they were with child; the  
bloud after they have conceived, which  
was uſed to flow, being ſtopped and ſuppreſſed,  
and not being converted into nourishment by

I

the

Cause of the swelling of the face.

the Mother, and much lesse by the child: most commonly though it doth not breed the former accidents, yet is it altered and converted into waterish humors: Moreover, the Liver through the abundance of blood wherewith it doth flow, breeds a serous or waterish blood; and being not able to digest it, it is thrust downward by the expulsive vertue of the upper parts, and at length rests it selfe upon the legges, feet, and thighs, the which makes them all swelled and oedematous. This swelling oftentimes doth continue both day and night, and sometimes it is so resolved in the night, that in the morning it is scarce perceived at all; but presently all the day the tumour is renewed, and at the evening doth much appeare; and then againe in the night it is resolved through rest, and the heat of the bed. Such as are much subject to the whites before their being with childe, are commonly troubled with this infirmity, which was observed by *Hippocrates* in cholericke people, and those that abound with serous, sharpe and biting humours. Beside the said oedematous swelling, there happens an inflammation, which doth caute the skinne to goe off; and sometime breedeth filthy ulcers. But this must bee remedied before these ulcers happen.

Who are not subject to the swelling.

These accidents continue commonly but the first foure moneths, yet with some they stay till their lying in, and so soone as they are delivered the swelling vanissheth of it selfe.

If this disease doe not much offend the woman with child, it shall not be needfull to use many Medicines,

dicines, but it is sufficient that she keepe a good diet, and chiefly if it resolve of it selfe in the night. But if she bee much troubled therewithall, let her use these remedies.

Advertisement concerning the cure

Let the swollen parts be rubbed with this medicine.

*Rx Olei Rosar. Omphacin. ℥iij. Aceti ℥ss. salis ℥ii. agitentur omnia simul, & fiat litus pro parte affecta.*

Liniment.

And if there bee any inflammation, adde to it a little un<sup>g</sup>. *Populeum*.

The swollen parts must be wrapped with cloths and swathed, beginning at the bottome, and so going upward.

Binding necessary.

Some finde good by laying thereon a Cabbage leafe, and binding it as before.

Others use the lye of Vine ashes, adding thereto a little Allom, & Fullers earth, then dipping therein a linnen cloth doubled, or else a sponge, and so apply it. I have made prooffe of this fomentation and cataplasme, when ther hath been no inflammation.

Lye of Vine ashes very good.

*Rx Fol. salv. Maioran. Ebul. Rorisma. an. m. i. flor. Cbamamel. Melilot. Lavand. Rosar. rub. an. p. i. Baccar. Laur. Iunip. Balauft. an. ℥ss. coquantur omnia in lixivii Cineris sarmentar. lb. xii. addendo Alom. crud. di. ℥i. fiat fons cum spongiis, deinde admoveatur sequens cataplasma.*

Fomentation.

*Rx Farin. fabar. hord. Orobi. an ℥. iii. coquantur perfecte in decocto superiori, addendo facis vini rub. ℥iij. Terebinth. comit. ℥i. s. unguent. Rosar*

Cataplasma.

Mef.

*Met. of Retic. Chamomile. in ʒij. palm. R. for. rub.  
Ires. florant. an. ʒj. add botan. parti. calide pra-  
missa foru.*

I have likewise used instead of the aforesaid fo-  
mentation, before the applying of the Poulteffe, to  
A tried remedy take a quantity of Danewort, a little Sage, with a  
few Chamomile and Melilot flowres, and heate  
them in a skillet, laying it round about the leg, and  
covering it quite with riles which cover the tops  
of houses, being a little heated, to keep the hearbs  
gently warme the space of an houre or two.

Some use snails with their shels beaten toge-  
ther, and apply them like a poulteffe.


Beside the former swelling of the legs, and feet,  
there hapneth to some a puffing up, or windy swell-  
ing in the entrance of the wombe, so great, and  
swollen, that I have seene it in some women, big-  
ger then halfe a childs head: which doth so grieve  
and trouble them, that they are scarce able to bring  
their legs together, but are faine to stand stradling:  
This swelling is very cleare, and thinning; and to  
say the truth, there is nothing but water contained  
within it, the which must be cured before her lying  
in. There are not any Cataplasmes, or the like, in  
this case that can doe much good: (as I my selfe  
have oft made triall) But only the manuell pra-  
ctice, making many long and deep scarifications of  
all sides, which will cause great store of water to  
flow and issue from the part: the which I have  
practized upon many. And it is to be noted, that  
oftentimes this tumour doth returne, and is filled  
againe,



again, therefore it will be necessary, to make new scarifications. And to the end that it may not come so soone againe, apply thereto, both within and without, fine lint moistned in the oyle of sweet Almonds, and laying upon it an emplaster made with a little *Cerotum infrigidans Galeni, & Desiccativum rubrum*, mingled together : this Medicine will make the Orifices vent and flow the longer. Not long since there were, two worthy Ladies (which for honor sake I will not name) that were troubled with this accident about the time of their lying in, in whom I opened and scarified those parts, to make the water flow and come forth. And it is to be observed, that we must await a fit opportunity to doe this; which will bee when they are neare their lying downe.

A tried remedy

*The means to helpe women which cannot beare, or their Children the full time.*

 Sometimes it happens to women, that they cannot beare their burthen to the time prefixed by nature, which is the ninth month. This accident is called either a Shift, or slipping away, or else Abortment, or (as our women call it) a miscarriage: The Shift is reckoned from the first day the seed is retained in the wombe, till such time as it receiveth forme and shape, in which

made no

time, if it chance to issue & flow forth, it is a Shift. The Abortment hapneth after the fortieth day, yea even to the end of the ninth month. For the Abortment is a violent expulsion, or exclusion of the child already formed & endued with life, before the appointed time. But the sliding away, or shift, is a flowing or issuing of the seed, out of the wombe, which is not yet, either form'd, or endued with life. Those that have beene delivered once before their time, for the most part they miscarry with the rest of their children, about the same time.

Causes of  
Abortment.

This accident may happen upon divers occasions, the which are either inward, or outward. The outward are, either an Ague, flux of blood, or of the belly, vomiting, or any other sickness that may happen unto a woman with childe; as also leaping, dancing, riding in a Coach, too much stretching of herselfe, and the lifting or carrying of any heavie burthen; the immoderate use of *Venus*, passions of the minde, as choller, sadnesse, longing after any thing, or the use of violent and strong Medicines.

Causes from  
the childe.

The inward causes are gathered from one of these three; either from the Mother, or things belonging to her, or from the childe. Those that are taken from the child, are when he is either so weak and sickly that he cannot bee kept in the wombe, being not able to draw sufficient nourishment, and thereby doth decay and die; or else by being too bigge and large, so that the wombe is not capable to lodge and support him; which maketh the vessels  
of

of the wombe to be relaxed and breake; then the entrance of the womb dilates it selfe, and the child commeth forth.

From the mother, when shee is either too small or low of stature, which causeth that the child cannot grow in so little roome, neither moye himselfe or breath, (although he breath only by the arteries of the mother) her brest being so straight that it cannot be stretched & enlarged: or else because she is too fat, which maketh the caule to presse downe, and crush the Matrice, and causeth the seed to flow and issue forth before it be formed. A woman also that is too leane, and doth eat but little, seldome or never beares her childe the full time. For if the mother be not well nourished, much lesse can the child. Too much eating stifles the child: as likewise the use of unwholsome meats doth ingender ill bloud in the mother; wherewith the childe being nourished, in the end languisheth, whence followeth death. Another cause may bee the over-much fulnesse & moistnesse wherewith women abound, and chiefly in their womb, which oftentimes is full and overflows with moisture, and filleth the vessels of the wombe full of slime, whereby the inner Orifice is enlarged and dilated, unable to support or keepe in the childe. There may likewise be engendered some sharpe and biting humours; wherewith the Matrice being stirred or provoked, while it endeavours to expell them, may thrust out the childe also.

Causes from the mother.

Leannesse causeth Abortment.

Fulnesse is cause of Abortment.

This accident may also happen to those that in their

They which have their naturall courses doe often miscarry.

their child-bearing, are subject to have their naturall courses, as if they were not with childe: which commeth to passe, when nature striving to put them forth, doth cause the child to be untied, and so he followeth the Purgings.

Things annexed to the mother, which doe cause abortment.

Concerning those things which are annexed or belonging to the mother, I understand them to be such as may bee growne or contained within the wombe, as some impostume, Scyrrhus, or excrescence of flesh, Mole, or false conception therein contained, as also great store of water, the which I saw not long since happen unto an honest Gentlewoman, whose wombe was so full of water in the eighth moneth, that the Orifice therof was constrained to open it selfe, and let them forth, the which was in such quantity, that it is incredible to be reported, and some six dayes after shee was delivered, the wombe not being closed againe.

As this accident is very dangerous both for the Mother and the childe; so will it bee needfull to prevent and remedy it with all speed possible.

Signes of abortment.

First, we may know that a woman is in danger to abort or miscarry, when the milke in her breasts doth flow and run forth in great quantity, her breasts remaining limber and soft: and if she be with child of two children, and one breast grow empty, it is a sign she will miscarry with one of them. For this sheweth that the childe doth loath and refuse his nourishment, chiefly if the nipple have gotten any ill colour, it is a signe that the Matrice is distempered, according to Hippocrates.

Hippoc. lib 5.  
Aphorif. 37. 38.

They

## Lib. 2. the happy delivery of Women.

73

They that are troubled with a great loosenesse of the belly, be often delivered before their time.

Loosenesse of the belly causeth abortions

Likewise great paine of the backe, and thighes, which come round to the groin, and bottome of the belly, doth oftentimes presage the like: As also when there floweth out of the conduit of nature, first certain waters, then bloody and slimy matter, and last of all blood.

To the end that it may be safely remedied, there must respect be had to the cause: Now concerning the outward causes, as if the mother bee troubled with any sickness she must be handled as it is requisite and fit: shee must shunne all violent exercises, passions of the mind, & the too often use of *Wine*. If the abortion proceed, from the littlenesse or lownes of the mother, before her being with child, let her use Bathes, fomentations, and oynments that may loosen and enlarge her belly, and Matricke. And while shee goeth with child let her feed moderately, to nourish herselfe, and her child, & when the ninth moneth is come, let her use supling and relaxing oynments like those formerly set downe,

Cure of Abortions

If the cause be of too much fatnes, it will be very fit and convenient to purge her, and let her blood, before shee bee with child; and to prescribe her a strict order of diet therby to make her leane, using meates that bee not too nourishing, or full of good juice. Contrariwise she that is too lean, must use good meates, and such as breed good juice, and that in good quantity. If too much eating and drinking, or the use of bad meates, that breed ill juices,

K

be

be the cause: then must she abstaine from them.

And when it doth proceed from the fulnesse and abouandance of humours, & water: as it happeneth in full-bodied young women, or which before their being with child were subject to some evacuations (as bleeding at the nose, Hemorrhoides, or abundance of ordinary purgations, and whites) then will it also be very needfull to purge, & let them blood and before their being with child, to make them use the dyet: and especially those, that have the ligaments of the womb loose and soft, and the vessels full of thicke and slimy matter: to whom likewise may be admittred cleansing, & strengthening injections, drying perfumes, Baths with sulphur, and emplanters for their backs, which shall hereafter be set downe.

When the diet is necessary.

Blood letting fit for them that abort.

And when they shall bee gone about foure moneths and a halfe, it will be very fit to purge them gently, and let them blood, the which may be done more plentifully and boldly (not all at once, but at sundry times) in those who before their being with child were used to more copious and frequent evacuations. For experience doth shew, that by this meanes, those which werewont to be delivered before their time, have not only borne their children to the ordinary time, but thereby also have bene brought a bed more easily, and with lesse pain and trouble. So that the child shall neither be in danger to bee stifled, by drawing more food then is needfull for his nourishment; nor of growing too big, by turning it into his owne sustenance, which might

Store of nourishment choiceth the child.

might be a meanes through his exceeding great-  
 nesse to breake and teare the ligaments that sup-  
 port him, or else, though he stay his full time, (being  
 thus big) that he should not be able to come easily  
 into the world.

To helpe the abortment, whereof the childe is  
 cause, being naturally either weake or sickly, it will  
 be very necessary, that the mother put to her hel-  
 ping hand; as much as she can possibly. Wherefore  
 she must be merry, quiet, as well in body as in mind  
 not fretting or vexing herselfe: and especially a-  
 bout the time shee was wont to be delivered, shee  
 must keepe her bed, using meates of easie digestion  
 and distribution, and drinke good claret wine: let  
 her take every two houres, a good space from her  
 meate, some of this opiate.

Of the abor-  
 ment that  
 cometh from  
 the childe,

Rx. Cons. Borag. Buglos. an. ℥i. Cons. Rosar. Anthos. an.  
 ℥vi. Cort. Citri. cond. Myrobol. condit. an. ℥i. Mar-  
 garit. splendid. Coral. rub. an. ℥i. ossis de corde cer-  
 vi. ℥s. Cum syr. Conser. Citri fiat Opiata capiat ℥i.  
 ut dictum est.

Opiate,

If she like not this Opiate, let her use these Lo-  
 zenges.

Lozenges.

Rx. Sp. Diamarg. frig. ℥ ii. Coral. rub. Corn. cervi. ussi-  
 an. ℥s. priapi. tauri. ℥ iii. Sacchar. in aqua. Bu-  
 glos. dissolut. ℥ iii. fiat electuarium per tabellas pon-  
 deris ℥s. vel ℥ ii. pro dose capiat ut dictum est.

Let her be belly annointed with this ointment as  
 wel to comfort the Matrice, as also to give strength  
 unto the child.

Ointment.

*R. Olei Mirtil. Cydonior: Mastich. an. ℥s. Coral. rub. fastal. rub. an. ℥i. maioran. Absynth. an. ℥iij. vng. Rosus. Mco. ℥s. Cera q. s. fiat Linimentum.*

Let there be laid upon her backe and *os sacrum*, some such emplaster. Some women have found good by applying upon their Navell a toste dipt in good red wine, strowing upon it the powder of Roses, *Grana tinctorum*; Coral; and a little Cinnamon.

The Emplaster

*R. Gallor. Nvo. Cupress. sang. Dracon. Balnst. mirtil. Ros. rub. an. ℥i. s. Mastic. Myrrhe an. ℥ij. Thur. Hypocist. acacie gum. Arabic. Bol. armen. an. ℥i. ladan. ℥i. Torbenth. venet. ℥i. s. picis Navalis. ℥vi. Cera ol. Mastich. an. q. s. ut fiat. secundum artem emplastrum.*

The emplaster must be often taken off, for feare of the itching, and put on againe; and if there happen any heate to the part, annoint it with Mesues ointment of Roses.

Remedies if the child be too big.

If you perceive that the child be too great, and big; to the end that he receive not so much nourishment, whereby he may grow bigger, and larger; the mother must abstaine from all meates that are so juicy and nourishing, and keepe herselfe quiet having her belly stayed up with a fit roler, that it hang not downe, and least the ligaments which hold the child might stretch, and so by the waight be torne, and broken asunder.

Causes of Abortment annexed to the Mother.

The like may be observed and practised in the causes annexed & ioyned to the mother, as if there be any Scyrrhus, Mole, Dropsie, Warts, Impostumes,



frums, excrecence of flesh, or other indisposition of the wombe. The which must be cured before the woman be with child, according to the disease doth require, it being very hard for a woman to proue with child, when she is troubled with any of the aforesaid accidents.

And in regard of outward causes, wherein we did comprehend the Ague, Laske, Fluxe of blood, vomiting and the like. These accidents must be prevented, according as the case doth require taking the advice of the learned Physicians, as we have said before. But concerning medicines, which must be more particularly applyed to outward causes; as falls, blowes, and violent exercises, for these have recourse to the medicints described for the childe that is weake, and sickly, to which these following may be added as being profitable for both causes. As if there appeare any blood, or red waters that begin to flow and come forth, by the naturall passage, this medicine is excellent.

Outward  
cause.

℞. *Graua. iij. ʒs. Coral. rub. margarit. ʒss. in  
gr. vi. germina dnor. avor. misce. acclitatur. ann  
vitello unius ovi. vob.*  
℞. *Mastich. subtilis. ʒs. feric. subtiliter. incisio ʒs.  
germina dnor. qvor. capsat. cum vitello ovi.*

Medicines for  
abortment.

She may likewise take in the morning, of Ozenge of Diarrhodon of the weight of a French Crowne. This powder also is very commendable.

℞. *Sp. Diamarg. frigid. ʒs. Coral. rub. ust. ʒ. lor. in  
aq. Rosar. pryap. Tanri. sic. an. ʒij. Eboris. Bol.  
Armen. terre sigillat. an ʒ iij. Sachar. rosar.  
tabulat.*

## Child-birth, or

tabulat. ʒ i. Caplat mane & sero. ʒ ii. pro unaquaque  
dos.

Of this powder also may bee made Lozenges.  
Let there bee applied to her backe the former  
Emplaster or this that followeth.

Re. Mastich. Mirrh gum. Arab. an. ʒ ii. N. entb. succ.  
Absynth. rad. Bistort. Nucum & sol. Cupress. an.  
ʒ i. Cortic. granat. ʒ ii. s. Styrac. calam. Co. sphon.  
picis Nabal. an. ʒ i. Cere Citrin. ʒ i. Terebinth.  
van. ʒ i. Ol. Mirrill. q. s. fiat empl. st. extendat. su-  
per alutam, ad usum.

Emplaster to  
retaine or keep  
in the child.

If the emplaster breed any inconvenience, let  
them use this ointment:

Ointment.

R. Ol. Cydonior. Mastich. Mirrill. an. ʒ ii. Bol. Ar-  
men. sang. Dragon. Corall. rub. an. ʒ s. Hypocist. A-  
cacie an. ʒ i. santal. cistr. rosar. rub. Sem. Berber.  
an. ʒ ii. Cere q. s. f. ung. pro rebus & ventre  
toto.

Having (with as much brevity, as possibly I could)  
treated of the Accidents which happen to women  
with child, and having likewise brought them even  
to the time that nature hath appointed for their  
delivery: it now remaineth, that wee handle the  
meanes, to helpe and ease them in this act and tra-  
vaile: the which shall be done, after wee have spo-  
ken somewhat concerning the beginning and office  
of Midwives, as being the first that are called in  
this business.



# THE MEANES TO HELPE

and succour a Woman with child, as  
well in her naturall travaile, as that  
which is contrary to nature.

## The second Booke.

### CHAP. I.

#### Of Mid-Wives.



Daily experience doth shew us, that  
many women are delivered with-  
out the helpe of the Mid-wife.  
Notwithstanding Antiquity tel-  
leth us, that there have bin Mid-  
wives even from the beginning;

yea that divers of that sex have practised Physick:

*Hippocrates* sweareth by *Apollo* and *Esculapine*  
and by *Hygea*, and *Panacea*, as Gods, and Goddeses  
of Physicke.

*Hippocrat.*  
Divers women  
Physicians.

*Ovid* doth make mention of *Ocyroe*, daughter to  
*Chyron* the great Physitian, who out of her curio-  
sity did practise Physicke.

*Ovid.*

*Origen*, in his eleventh Homily upon *Exodus* speaketh of two Midwives, very skilfull in Physicke, which were *Egyptians*, and calls them *Sephora* and *Phua*.

Beside this curiosity; necessity, ( the mistresse of Arts ) hath constrained women, to learne and practise Physicke, one with another. For finding themselves afflicted, and troubled with divers diseases in their naturall parts, and being destitute of all remedies, ( for want whereof many perished, and dyed miserably ) they durst not discover, and lay open their infirmities, to any but themselves, accounting it to be dishonest : As *Higinus* testifies who relateth, how the *Athenians* had forbidden women, by their Lawes, to study in Physicke ; and that at the same time there was a certaine maide named *Agnodicea*, very desirous to study therein, who the better to attaine unto her purpose, did cut off her haire, and apparell her selfe like a man : and being so disguised, she became the scholler, of *Herophilus* the Physitian : And when she had learned Physicke, having notice of a certaine woman that was troubled in her naturall parts ; shee went unto her, and made proffer of her service ; which the sicke party refused, thinking she had boene a man : But when *Agnodicea* had assured her ( by discovering of herselfe ) that she was a maide, the woman committed her selfe into her hands, who drist, and cured her perfectly : and with the like care and Industry shee looked to many others, and cured them. Which being knowne by the Physicians, be-  
cause

Why women  
did study  
Physicke.

*Higinus*.  
Women forbid  
to study Phy-  
sicke.

A notable  
History.

## Lib. 2. the happy deliverie of Women.

81

cause they were not called any more to the cure of women, they accused the said *Agnodice*, that shee had shaved off her beard, that thereby shee might abuse women, faining themselves to be sicke. Then shee putting aside her garments, made it evident that shee was a Maide, which caused the Physicians then to accule her of a greater fault, for transgressing the Law, which forbade women either to studie or practise Physicke. This being come to the eares of the chiefe women, they presently went to the chiefe Magistrates, and Iudges of the City, called the *Areopagites*, and told them: that they did not account them, for their husbands, and friends but for enemies; that they would condemne her, which restored them to their health: which made the *Athenians* to revoke and disanull that Law, giving Gentlewomen leave to studie and practise Physicke.

Now since the greatest disease that women can have is that of the nine Months, the *Crisis* and cure whereof consisteth in their safe delivery; we must not doubt, but that there have beene some women addicted thereto, and practised therein, in all ages. *Hippocrates* (speaking of the birth that hapneth in the seventh Month, doth refer the Reader unto the Midwives, who are present at such labours, and wisheth him to learne the truth thereof, of them.

*Galen* saith, that Midwives doe not bid the women that are in travails, either to raise themselves, or to sit downe in the Chair, before that the deli-

L

trance

There have  
beenne Mid-  
wives from  
the beginning.  
Lib. de Carnibus.

Lib. 3. de Funct.  
naturalibus.

Midwives in  
*Galen* time.

traces of the womb broken, for the coming  
forth of the child, which they know by feeling  
with their hand. The same Author likewise speaketh  
of the errors committed by Midwives, when  
they receive the child; an evident testimonie that  
there were some such in the time of Hippocrates and  
Galen.

Lib. de Casibus  
mat. born. ...

Socrates mo-  
ther a Midwife

Lib. 1. c. 1. de  
Extraordinariis  
cognitione.

Lactius and Helianus do testify, that  
Phaenocrata the mother of *Antisthenes* was a Midwife:  
yes, and it is found, that the ancient Judges did  
appoint a stipend for those women that practized  
Physicke well; and which were good Midwives:  
Witness *Hippocrates*: as likewise, such were punished,  
as had practized, in behav'd themselves, in  
their profession, as it appeareth by the Law, *Item*  
*Obstetricia*.

But among those that have practized Physicke,  
there were some that have applyed themselves  
most to the delivering of Women; and for a dif-  
ference from others, they were commonly called  
*Cunning Women*; or did caused themselves to be so  
called; for women of this disposition, that they  
desire to excell men, or at least to become to go be-  
yond them. Whence it may easily be perceived,  
that there hath bene some women that have pra-  
ctized Physicke, and others that were employ'd in  
the delivery of women. And these last take upon  
them three things as the Lawyers, *Plato* in *his*  
*Republic*, and *Galen* do witness.

Two sorts of  
cunning wo-  
men.

Two sorts of  
cunning wo-  
men.

Gal in 6. lib.  
5. Aph. Hip.  
First office.

The first office was to make the marriage, and to  
joyne the husband to the wife; and the wife to  
judge,

judge, whether they were fit, and capable, or else unable, and insufficient to have issue, and beget children: which is very difficult to be knowne, and at this day, there is no woman (of cunning) who is able to tell it.

The second office was, to be a professe at the delivery of women, and birth of children, whether it were in giving of some medicines, (as Teraciacoth witnessse) whose words are these; *Let her drinke that which I appointed, and the quantity I commanded;* or else by using her handiworke: which worke was committed to none, but those that had had children; because, (as *Plato* saith) none can be so apt and skillfull in exercising a worke not knowne, as they which have had the perfect knowledge and experience thereof. Beside, the said Midwife was not to beginne to use this art, before shee was past child-bearing: because *Diama* (the Patronesse of women in child-bed) is barren, and also for that a woman that beareth children, is much troubled, and more unapt to labour and take paines.

The second office.

*Art. 3. Sem. 2. Andr. Quod jus ei dare bibere, & quantum imperari, dicit.*

value of 100  
substantive  
collegial

The Midwife must be past child-bearing.

The third office.

the name of  
of the  
the name of  
the name of

Another office of Midwives, or

The third office was to know, and tell whether a woman was with child, or no. And therefore the Law given *ad Diffractus* did ordaine, that three honest Midwives, skillfull in Midwifery, should view and make inspection, and then give their judgement, whether the Woman were with child.

But since that time beside the three former Offices, they have taken upon them authority, to judge of the virginitie of maids. Now, neither of these

mous Vniverſities of *Italy* have rejected, and condemned the opinion of ſuch Midwives, who ſay they can judge thereof. And Maſter *Cujacius* hath done the like ( for the french ) ſaying that it is very difficult, yea impoſſible, to know whether a maid be a virgin or no; And that this power was never given unto Midwives by the *Civil Law*, to judge thereof.

*What manner of Woman, a Midwife ought to be.*

**M**Any things are requiſite, and needfull in a Midwife, but they are all referred to her perſon, to her Manners and to her mind: Firſt, concerning her perſon, ſhe muſt bee of an indifferent age, neither too young, nor too old: well compoſed of body: not being ſubject to any diſeaſes, nor miſhapen, or deformed in any part thereof, neat in her apparell, and perſon: eſpecially having little hands & not thicke: cleane, and her nailes pared very neere and even; neither muſt ſhee weare rings upon her fingers, nor bracelets upon her armes, when ſhe is about her buſineſ. She muſt be pleaſant and merry, of good diſcourſe, ſtrong, painfull, and accuſtomed to labour; that ſhe may bee able ( if need bee ) to watch two or three nights by the woman.

Concerning her behaviour, ſhe muſt bee milde, gentle, courteous, patient, ſober, chaſt, not quarrelſome; nor chollericke, neither proud or coverous, nor a blabber, or reporter of any thing ſhe ſhall either heare or ſee in ſecret, in the houſe or perſon of her

The quality of a Midwife for her perſon.

Her manners.  
*And. Ab. 1. Se.*  
*4. Sane pol illa temulenta eſt mulier & temeraria; nec ſatis digna tui committere partu mulierum.*



Lib. 2. the happy delivery of Women. 85

her she hath delivered. For as Terence saith, *It is not fit to commit her into the hands of a drunken, or raffe woman, that is in travell of her first child.* Drunkoness  
reproved.

As for her mind, shee must be wise, discreet, and witty, able to make use sometime of faire and flattering speeches; as *Plato* reporteth Midwives were wont to doe in times past: which was done to no other end but onely to busie and beguile the poore apprehensive women. And it is a commendable deceit, allowed also in a Chirurgeon when it is done for the patients good. For as the same *Terence* saith. *Deceit doth serve oftentimes for a good medicine in extreme diseases.* Her mind.

Now above all things the said Midwife ought to know that nature, the handmaid of this great God, hath given to every thing a beginning, increase, state, perfection, & declining, which he doth manifestly and chiefly shew (saith *Galen*) in the birth of a child, when the mother brings him into the world. For Nature surpasseth all, and in that she doth, is wiser than either Art, or the Midwife, whosoever shee bee, yea, then the best or most cunning workeman that may bee found, as *Galen* witnesseth. For it is she, that hath set downe the day of the childs conformation, and the houre of his birth. And certainly it is a thing worthy of consideration, to see how in a litle space, yea even in the twinkling of an eye, the necke of the wombe, which all the time of the nine moneths was so perfectly and exactly closed and shut, that the point of a needle could not enter therein, how (I say) in an

The chiefe office of a Midwife.

Lib. 7. de usu partium.

Admirable thing.

stant it is dilated and enlarged, to give passage, and way for the child, the which cannot be comprehended (as the same *Galen* saith) but only wondered at, and admired. The same Author in his fifteenth booke *De usu partium*; desirous to shew the providence of Nature saith, that the faults of Nature are very rare, and that she worketh alwaies, and in such order, and measure, that of a thousand Births, there is scarce one found that is amisse.

Wherefore neither the Midwife nor any of the Womans kinsfolkes, or assistants, ought to doe any thing rashly, but suffer nature to worke; helping her notwithstanding in that which shall bee needfull as hereafter shall bee declared: dividing the worke of their delivery into three severall times and seasons.

*What must be observed when the woman feels her selfe neare her time.*

### CHAP. III.



Asime of delivery being at hand, the woman is to prepare herselfe in this manner. She must presently send for the Midwife, and her keeper, it being better to have them about her too soon, than too late; for there be some women that are delivered sodainely without the helpe of any one, although they have beene long in their first labour.

The bedde.

In the meane time; shee must have a little bedde pro-

provided her, like a pallat, which must be of a reasonable bignesse strong and firme, and also of an indifferent height (as well for her owne commodity as the Midwives, and others that shall be present about her, to helpe her, in her labour) and it must be so set & placed, that they may conveniently come and go round about her, it must be placed far from any doore, and somewhat neere the fire. Let it also be conveniently furnished with beds & good store of linnen that they may be often changed, as need shall require. And likewise there must be laid crosse the beds feete, a peece of wood, for the woman to rest her feete upon, that so shee may have the more strength when she bendeth her legs, as we will shew hereafter.

As soone as shee feels herselfe stirred and provoked with throwes and paines, which are usuall in this case, it were good for her to walke up & down the chamber, and then lay herselfe down warme in her bed: and then againe afterwards to rise & walke up and downe the chamber, and then lay her down waite in her bed: and then againe afterwards to rise up and walke, expecting till the water bee gathered, and the Membric be opened, for to keep herselfe so long in her bed, would be very tedious and painfull. Yet it may chance, that being in bed shee may take some soft and have a little slumber, and so by this means the mother may gather more strength, & the child be the better enabled to come at the time, which God hath appointed it; and also the waters will be the better expured & gathered.

They

Women in trav  
vaile must  
walke.

Rest is often  
profitable.

They may give her, if the labour be long, a little broth, or the yelke of an egge with some butter, and bread, and also a little wine and water.

Divers sorts of bringing women to bed.

It is very certaine, that all women are not delivered after one fashion: for some are delivered in their bed; others sitting in a chaire, some standing being supported and held up by the standers by or else leaning upon the side of a bed, table or chaire, others kneeling being held up by the two armes. But the best and safest way, is; to be delivered in their bed, (the which I advise them to) the midwife, and assistants, as her kinsfolkes, friends, and keepers, observing this that followes,

The best way to be delivered.

The placing of a woman in travails.

First the woman must be laid flat upon her backe, having her head raised somewhat high, with a pillow under her backe that it bow not: and under her buttocks and *os sacrum*, let her have another pretty big pillow, that thereby those parts may be somewhat lifted up: for a woman that sinketh down into the bed can never be well delivered, and therefore the well placing of them is of great consequence. Let her thighe and knees be stretcht forth and laid abroad one from another; and her legs bowed and drawn upward, having her heels & the soles of her feet, leaning hard against the peece of wood which is laid crosse the bed for this purpose. •

About some they put a swath foure times doubled under their backe, and hinder parts, which comes round about them: this swath must be a foot broad & better, and so long, that it may be held by two women, standing on each side of the bed, therewith

## Lib. 2. the happy delivery of Women.

69

with to lift up the woman in travaile a little, pulling it gently towards them, & chiefly when her throws come upon her. For this raising or lifting up doth much refresh her, and makes her endure her throws with more ease.

Beside the two women that hold the swath, there must bee two more of her friends or kinsfolks, to take her by the hands, thereby to clinsh or crush them when her throwes come, and the other hand they must hold on the top of her shoulders, that she rise not upward too much, and that shee may the better strain her selfe, for oftentimes as she thrusts her feete hard against the peece of wood, which is put crosse the bed, shee raiseth herselfe upward. Sometime I have bid one of the women that stand by to presse gently with the palme of her hand the upper parts of the belly, stroking the child downward by little and little, the which pressing did hasten the delivery, & made them endure the throws better, and with more ease.

Another helpe  
for a woman  
in labour.

The woman in travaile being thus placed, must take a good heart, and straine herselfe as much as shee can, when her throws come upon her, making them double and increase, by holding in her breath and stopping her mouth, and forming herselfe, as though she would goe to the stoole, which is much fitter for her to doe then to lye crying and lamenting.

*Aristotle* hath well observed, that those women, which draw their breath upward, are delivered with much paine, because they make the Midrife

*De generatibus  
Animal.*

M

Digitized by Google

rise

rise up which in this businesse, should rather be depressed, and kept downe. It is very fit indeed, that she take some ease and respite, not forcing herselfe much for every little pang that happens, which she may gather all into one, thereby to make them available, when time shall serve.

*Acetes.*

If shee weare about her necke an Eagles stone, loadstone, the skinne of an Vrus or wild Ox or the like, which might keepe backe the child, let them be taken away, and tied to her thighs.

But above all things she must bee obedient to all that is commanded her, either by his kinsfolks, and friends, or by the Midwife. Likewise she must be patient in her sicknesse, calling upon God for helpe, since it concernes both her own life, and the childs; and shee must call to mind, that hee hath said with his owne mouth; *That the woman should bring forth with labour and paine.* For it would bee a rare thing to see a woman delivered without any paine. *Medea in Euripides* saith, *That shee had rather dye twice in the warres, then to be once delivered of a child.*

*Genes.*

*Euripides.*

Neverthelesse we read in histories, of a certaine Country wherein women are delivered without any paine. And *Aristotle* in his wonderfull Narrations reporteth, that the women of *Ligustria* doe bring forth without paine, and that they returne to their businesse as soone as they are delivered.

Women delivered without paine.

They that write the History of *America* doe tell the like of the women in that country, which is; That as soone as they be delivered, (they are so kind to their husbands, which tooke the paines to beget the

*Lib. 2. the happy delivery of Women.* 91

the child) that they presently rise up, and lay their husbands in their roome; who are used and attended like women in child-bed. And in this manner they bee visited of all their friends and kinsfolke, who bring them gifts and presents. Men that lie in

CHAP. IV.

*The office and duty of a Midwife for the first time, she must observe in the travaile.*

**T**He Woman that is ready to be delivered being thus placed and laid in her bed, must have the Midwife neare unto her: who ought first to aske of her woman whether shee hath gone her full time, and bee ready to bee delivered, and at what time shee conceived; then must shee handle her belly, and marking it well, consider diligently whether the upper parts seeme as if they were empty and fallen, and the neather parts very bigge and full: which sheweth that the childe is sunke downe. Beside, shee must aske her whether shee have any paines, and in what manner they be, where they begin, and where they end: and whether they be little or great, and frequent: whether they begin at the backe running downe all along the belly, without staying at the Navell: and chiefly if they runne along the groine, and end in the bottome of the belly inwardly (that is in the inner neck of the womb) then it is a signe that she begins to fall in travaile.

Signes of being in travaile.

M 2

And

And for the more assurance, let the Midwife thrust up her hand, being first anointed either with fresh butter, Hogs-grease, or some other ointment, which hereafter shall be set downe. And if she perceiveth that both the inner and outward Orifice of the wombe be dilated and opened, it is a signe she begins to bee in travaile, especially if there flow or come forth by the said passage any slime or water: the which doe foreshew that the birth is at hand, as *Hippocrates* saith, which if they be pale, it signifies for the most part it will be a wench, and if it be reddish that it is a sonne. Now this slime commeth by the dilatation of the inner Orifice, and from the membrane, that doth wrap and infold the childe, which begins to breake. And also by reason of the vessels and ties which are loosened from the sides of the wombe, the which may be perceived by the waters which will swell, shewing like a bubble, or rather like a bladder full of water. And when the water begins to be thus gathered, there is no doubt to be made, but that the woman is in travaile: *Hippocrates* doth observe three sorts of humors that flow in the time of their travaile: the first is slimie; the second reddish; the third is the water wherein the childe swimmeth, and here endeth the first time, which the Midwife must observe.



CHAP. V.

Of the second time that the Midwife must observe.



When the waters are in this sort gathered together, by meanes of the throwes, which come by little and little : then the Midwife must place her selfe conveniently neare unto the

The placing of the Midwife.

woman, sitting in a chaire somewhat lower than the bed : and she must sit in such manner, that shee may easily put up her hand (being first anointed) into those parts; when need requires. And by this meanes shee may know whether the childe come naturally or no, for in feeling gently crosse the membrane, that containes the waters, shee shall finde either the roundnesse of the childe head, or else some unevennesse. If in feeling shee perceive that there is any hard and equall rotundnesse, it is most likely to be the childe head, and that he comes naturally; but if shee feele any unevennesse, the contrary may be imagined.

The meanes to know how the child cometh.

When she perceiveth that all comes well, and according to nature, the throwes increasing upon the woman, and that the childe doth strive and endeavour to come forth, and the wombe doth strain it selfe to be freed of this burthen; then the Midwife must encourage the woman, exhorting her to hold in her breath, by stopping her mouth, and to straine downward, as though she would give counte Roole : Assuring her that shee shall be quickly eased

of her paine : and that her childe is even ready to come into the world, exhorting her to be patient, and promising that shee shall have either a goodly sonne, or a faire daughter, according as she knoweth her affection inclined.

And the Midwives greatest charge must be, that she doe nothing hastily, or rashly, or by force, to enlarge the passage of the child, and much lesse to let forth the water, or to breake, and teare the membranes that containe it : but she must expect till it breake of it selfe.

The water must  
not be let forth.

Some Midwives, either through ignorance or impatience, or else by being hastned to go to some other womans labour, doe teare the membranes with their nailes, and let forth the water, to the great hurt and danger, both of the poore woman and her child, who remains dry, the water being issued and voided before the appointed time; yea, oftentimes before the childe be well turned, which hath bene the death of many women and children. But when the water, both by the endeavour of the mother, and likewise of the child, shall be newly broken; then as well the Midwife, as the rest of the women present; must more and more encourage the woman, especially when her throwes into a feare, beseeching her in the name of God, that she would farther them, as much as she can possibly. In the meane time the Midwife must continually anoint the neather parts with butter, or some other fat. And when the head doth offer it selfe to come forth, shee must receive it gently with

Lib. 1. the happy delivery of Women.

85

with both her hands: which being come forth, and  
and the womans throwes increasing, she must draw  
out the shoulders hand somely, sliding downe her  
finger under the childs arme-pits, taking the oppor-  
tunity and time when her throwes come fastest.  
And it is to bee noted, that the throwes cease very  
litle, or not at all, after the head and shoulders be  
once come forth; Nevertheless, it will be very fit  
to give the poore woman a little breathing, increa-  
sing her, that she would be of as good cheere as she  
can. After this, the Midwife having drawne out the  
shoulders, may easily draw forth the rest of the bod-  
dy: which must not be done either hastily or rashly.

But because the child naturally doth come into  
the world, with the face downward: therefore  
when he is quite taken forth, hee must bee turned  
upon his backe: for feare lest hee bee stifled, or  
chok't. And if his navell-string be wound about  
his necke, (as many times it happens) then must it  
be unwood. Oftentimes likewise, the child is so  
feeble, and faint, that there can scarcely bee percei-  
ved any breath, or life in him: and therefore hee  
must have a little wine spirted into his mouth, nose  
and eares, in that quantity as shall bee needfull.  
When hee is come to himselfe, and begins to cry,  
then the Midwife must follow the string, wagging  
and shaking it, thereby to draw, and bring forth  
gently the after-birth, to which it is tyed: bidding  
the woman to cough, and likewise to hold some  
salt in her hands, fast shut together, and then blow  
in them.

The Navel  
string must bee  
undone.

Means to  
draw forth the  
after burthen.

In

What must be  
done to the  
child.

In the meane time the Midwife, or some other woman, must presse, gently with her hand, the top of the womans belly, stroaking it lightly downward the after-burthen being come, it must be laid upon the childs belly: and the child, together with the after-birth, must be wrapped up handsomely in a bed, and a blanket, to be carried nearer the fire, covering the head with a linnen cloth five or six times double: and yet not exposing him sodainly either to the fire-light, day-light, or candle-light, lest by this sodaine change his sight might be hurt: but his eyes must be covered, that by little and little he may open them, and acquaint them with the light.

But as I said before, the woman must be encouraged when the water doth issue forth, and caused to straine herselfe to bee delivered, that the childe may follow the foresaid water.

And they must likewise observe diligently, whether the paines, bee the paines of travaile, or no: and whether the water be that, wherein the child swimmeth. For there be, some women that have these waters issue out, and come away, long before they are ready to lie downe. Which I have seene happen unto divers women, and of late memorie to *Mad. Arnault*, who having gone sixe or seven moneths, and troubled with a great Colique, that had held her almost two moneths, and tooke her every day at certaine howres: Shee being at her house in the Countrey, intreated me that I would come and see her, and to have  
my


A notable  
Story.

my advise and counsell, whether it were fit for her to come into the City, which I advised her to doe: both because of the great paine she had, and also for her exceeding greatnesse: being of opinion that she might have two children, as she had had not above a yeare before. Being come to *Paris*, her Colique was somewhat mitigated, and a little while after she voided two or three gallons of water without any paine, thinking verily then that she was not with childe; yet five daies after she was delivered very happily, and with little paine, of a faire daughter, there following very little water, or none at all.

I saw another Lady in whom these waters came away above ten daies before her deliverie, yet she kept not her bed, but followed her ordinary businesse. And this is worth marking, that they may be carefull not to hasten the delivery; except the paines bee proper for travaile, and such as I have already described.

CHAP. VI.

*The third time that must be observed by  
the Midwife.*

 Soone as the childe is borne, and that the Mother is delivered of her after-birth, the Midwife shall cause her legs to bee gently laid downe, taking away the peece of wood that lay at her feet: and put a fine linnen cloth, or rather

N

ther a cleane sponge, washed in warme water, and wrung out betweene her thighs, neare unto her naturall parts, that the cold ayre may not get therein : and then must she take the child, together with the after-burthen, and carry them to the fire, as hath beene said already.

And if it happen that the after-burthen be long ere it come, or bee drawne forth ; and that the childe may not stay so long there, for danger to be stifled, and die, it being oftentimes very weake : The Midwife shall first tie, and then cut the childs Navell-string, to separate him from the after-burthen : Which must be done in this manner.

How the Navell  
must be tied.

Shee must have in readinesse a good double thread, and a paire of sharpe Scissors : with the thread shee must tie the Navell a good inch from the childs belly with a double knot, or oftner : this knot must bee neither too hard and strait, neither too loofe : for too strait tying, beside the extreame paine it causeth, makes that which is tyed fall off too soone, and that before the scar be growne betweene the live, and the dead part : And if it be tied too loofe, thereof proceeds a flux of blood from the umbilicall vessels, which are not exactly closed and stopped by the said ligature : and therefore a meane must be observed in doing it. Then being thus tied, the Navell-string must be cut off an inch beneath the knot ; and that the knot may not slip, nor the thread slide away, shee must take a little fine linnen Roler, dipt in oile of Roses, wherewith shee must wrap the rest of the Navell, and

Where the Navell  
must be cut

with

## Lib. 2. the happy delivery of Women.

99

with a little fine bombast moistned in the same oyle, she must lay it upon the belly, that it be not crusht, when they dresse and swath the child. By this ligature, that which is tyed will come to wither, and dry of it selfe, and some foure or five daies after, more, or lesse, the dead part will fall from the quick, which must not be forced or pluckt off in any case.

The Navell must fall of it selfe.

Some do observe, that the Navell must be tyed longer, or shorter, according to the difference of the sexe, allowing more measure to the males: because this length doth make their tongue, and privie members the longer: whereby they may both speake the plainer, and be more serviceable to Ladies. And that by tying it short, and almost close to the belly of females, their tongue is lesse free, and their naturall part more strait: And to speake the truth, the Gossips commonly say merily to the Midwife; if it be a boy, *Make him good measure*; but if it be a wench, *Tye it short*.

The measure in tying the Navell.

A common saying of Women.

*Hippocrates* would have them, in tying the Navell, observe this that followeth. If a woman (saith hee) bee delivered with paine, and the child stay long in the wombe, and comes not forth easily, but with trouble: and chiefly if it be by the Chirurgians helpe, and instruments: such children are not long lived, and therefore their Navell-string must not be cut, before they have either sneezed, puffed, or cryed.

Precepts of Hippocrates.

Anon after the Midwife hath cut the Navell, she must wipe and make cleane the child, not only

N a

his

his face, but his whole bodie, and the wrinkles and folds of the arme-pits, buttocks, and joynts, either with fresh Butter, or oyle of sweet Almonds. Some do it with oyle of Roses, others with oyle of Nuts, thereby to make the skin more firme, and to stop the pores, that the outward ayre may not hurt him, and likewise to strengthen all his parts.

Avicennas  
Method.

*Avicenn* boyleth Roses and Sage in wine, and washeth the child with a fine soft Spung dipt therein: and so continnes it three or foure mornings, when he is shifted.

What must be  
given the child  
after he is  
borne.

The child being thus shifted and annoited, and then well dried, and wrapt up by the Midwife, or others; they must presently give him a little wine and Sugar in a spoone, or else the bignesse of a pease, of *Mithridate*, or *Triacle*, dissolved in a little wine, if it be Winter, and in Summer (by reason of the heat) with a little *Carduus Benedictus*, or some other *Cordiall water*.

*Avicenn* doth thinke it sufficient to give them a little Hony: and to rub the top and bottome of the tongue with ones finger dipt in hony. And by this meanes, to see whether they be tongue-tyed, and so to cut the string, if it be needfull.

CHAP.



CHAP. VII.

*Of the Care that must bee had of a Woman  
in Child bed.*



While the Midwife doth cut the childs Navell, and make him cleane, the Nurse, or some other that is present, must have an especiall Care of two things: The first is, To give the woman in child-bed this drinke.

Take oyle of sweet Almonds newly drawne, two ounces, Syrup of Maidenhaire, one ounce, white wine, water of Parietarie of the wall, and Carduus Benedictus of each halfe an ounce, Mingle them very well together with much shaking, and so let her drinke it. This medicine will mitigate and lenifie the passage of the throat, and *Trachea Arteria*, which have beene heated, and stretched with crying, and groining: And likewise it will helpe to provoke the purgings, and hinder the pangs and gripings from being so violent.

A Drinke for a woman in child-bed.

2 The second is, to cause a sheep to be fleaed, and to wrap the womans backe and belly in the skin yet warme, thereby to strengthen and comfort all those parts, which have beene as it were disiointed, & pulled one from another, with much striving in her travaile. *Avicen* thinks it enough to lay upon the womans belly, a Hares skin newly stript from the Hare being alive.

Then the Midwife (if shee be not busied about the Childe) or some other that looketh to the woman, shall apply beneath to the entrance of the naturall part, and about the bottome of her belly this medicine.

A R  
sing Medicine.

Take oyle of *Hypericum, Saint Iohns Wort*, two ounces,

Oyle of *Roses*, an ounce: Two whole egges.

Mingle them well together, and let them be applied as I shewed before, with fine linnen cloths, or flax, likewise there must be laid under her hams, a little pillow doubled, to make her keepe her knees up a litle, & that her thighs & legs lie not straight down. Let her neither lie along, nor sit upright, but keepe her selfe betweene both, having her head and body rather a little raised, then laid low, that her purgings may the easier come away.

After the skinne hath layen there two or three daies, the Midwife, or her nurse shall take it away, and swath her belly, rubbing & annointing it first, with oyle of *Saint Iohns wort, sweet Almonds, and Roses*, mingled together. For this swathing serves to keepe the Matrice in his place, and to drive downe gently her after-purgings, and also is a meanes to keepe out the aire, which otherwise might cause the woman to have great paines and gripings.

The fashion of  
the swath.

The swath must bee made of linnen cloth foure times doubled, of the bredth of all her belly, which must be put round about her back & belly smooth without any pleat and wrinkle. And while they be about this, they must take an especial care, that the

WO-

woman catch not cold, nor that the aire get not into her wombe, which being emptied of such a burthen will easily receive it, and this might bee a meanes to make it swell and puffe up, and to shut the Orifices of the veines, by which her purgings should flow : the suppression whereof doth cause paines, gripings, suffocation, an ague, and many other accidents.

They must be ware of making cold.

Now when the woman shall be thus accommodated, she must be kept from sleeping, though she be very desirous thereof, and let her in the meane time be entertained with some discourse, and let her Nurse looke to her breasts, applying such things thereunto, as shall be set downe in the third Booke in their proper place.

After the woman hath beene kept three or foure houres from sleeping, you may give her some broth made with a knuckle of Veale, or a Chicken, or in stead thereof, a couple of yelks of egges, and so let her take her rest : and if shee have any desire to sleepe, she may, which must be some three or foure houres after her Delivery, the doors and windowes of her chamber being close shut, not making any noise.

The woman in childe bed must be in quiet.

And so let this suffice for the naturall travaile or Delivery, wherein there hath beene no difficulty : the woman being neither much troubled, nor having had any great paines, but those that are ordinary, and such as God hath appointed, which is, that *In sorrowe women should bring forth.*

Chap. 15.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of a painfull and difficult Delivery, with the causes thereof.*



Women are brought a bed very hardly, and with much paine, upon divers reasons, which is an occasion that many repaire unto Physicians and Chirurgions to have their helpe; since there bee few Midwives found skillfull, that can give them much aid or succour in these cases.

*Causes of difficult Delivery.*

A Chirurgion being called thither, ought diligently to enquire what may be the cause, and consider carefully thereof: now the cause may be referred to foure things, either to the Mother, or to the childe: or to things that are annexed unto the childe: or else to outward things, and so accordingly must they frame the remedy.

*Cause from outward things.*

In the number of outward things I comprehend those persons, that are about the woman in travaile, who if they bee displeasing unto her, are to be intreated gently to withdraw and absent themselves. Whether it be by reason that the woman hath any feare, apprehension, or any mislike and loathing, unwilling to have them so neare her, when shee is in her travaile and anguish; or else being ashamed to see her selfe in that case.

*Lib. 2. cap. 6.*

2. Physicians, who have the patients held an opinion, that the delivery might be hindered and prove difficult

difficult: if there were any in the womans chamber which held her fingers lockt or shut one within another: and produceth for an example *Almona*; Opinion of Pliny. Story of Almona. who could not be delivered of *Hercules* but with much difficulty.

3. Likewise the outward aire being too cold, may hinder the delivery, because it cooleth the woman, shutting up her body, and especially those parts, which ought to bee enlarged and dilated. As also the ayre being too hot, spendeth the spirite, and makes the woman lose her strength, remaining weake and feeble; and as it were fainting, without any power of courage. And therefore the aire must be temperate, yet rather hot than cold. Coldnesse or heat doth hinder the delivery.

4. Pleasing smells, (as of Muske, Civet, Amber-Grise, or the like, if she have such about her, the vapour whereof may strike up into her nose) doe hinder the delivery, because they draw the wombe upwards. Effect of sweet smells.

If the causes of difficult delivery, be in the mother her selfe, it comes either by reason of her person, or her age, or her naturall disposition, or of some other accident shee hath had, or may have: Causes from the Mother. or by being delivered before or after her time.

1. Her person or body may be the cause thereof: as if shee be too fat and full: for in such women I have seene that store of fat come down into their naturall parts, which stopped the passage. Fattnesse. And in others I have seene the Cause come downe, which did so presse and crush together both the inward and outward necke of the wombe, that it could very hardly

hardly open it selfe, yea, and being dilated, and enlarged, did even close & presse it together again.

The Bladder,

In some I have seene and felt part of the bladder present it selfe at the entrance of the wombe.

A woman that is too leane and bare, as also one that is too little, may likewise bee delivered with much difficulty. And when this hapneth, it cannot be remedied, as one would desire.

Leanness.

2. Now concerning their age: both they that are too young, as being too straight, and also they that are old, having also their naturall parts too much shrunke together and dried, and the bones too closely joyned together, and the Cartilages very hard, which cannot so well yeeld, and bee dilated, as in youth; I say both of these be delivered with very much difficulty.

From her disposition.

3. Their naturall disposition likewise may be a cause that they are delivered with much paine.

1. As if they be weake of constitution, nice, tender, timorous, and afraid of paine: which makes them that they will not force themselves, nor make their paines and throwes effectuall: and when the child is even ready to come forth, they shrinke in themselves with the very feare they have to feele such paine.

Hippocrates.

2. Hippocrates saith, that women which have an Ague when they are with child, and become very leane without a manifest cause, doe bring forth their children with great difficulty, paine and danger: And if they doe miscarry or abort, then they are in danger of their lives. The same Author saith, that



greedy, and lickerish that it doth even come down to meet nature, sucking, and (as it were) snatching the same, though it remaine only about the mouth and entrance of the outward orifice thereof.

A story of A-  
verrises.

*Averrises* tells a story of a woman that became with child, onely by drawing in (as she bath'd her selfe) the seed of a man that was bathed in the said Bath.

A true story.

The yeare 1607; in May, *Master de la Nove* the Kings Chirurgeon in Ordinary, and Sworne in the *Chastelet of Paris*, was called to search a young Woman the wife of a Gold-Smith, who had beene cited by her Husband to appeare before the Officiall of Paris: alleadging, that shee was not capable nor fit by nature, to be married: which was an occasion that *Germane Hussart* a Midwife, and my selfe were sent for to search her. Where wee found, that in the very entrance of the womb, there was a membrane so strong, hard, and thicke that a mans finger, (and much lesse the other part) was not able to breake it open; he having oftentimes made tryall to doe it, whereby he had incurred a *Paraphimosis*: And therefore it was concluded, that her husband had a just cause to cite her, but yet for all this, that it was curable.

Whereupon her Husband thought good to call *Master de Lenoire*, and *Mestre*, Sworne Chirurgians at Paris: themve all there concluded with a generall consent, to make an incision of the said Membrane, which was done, and dressed and healed, to her Husbands content: onely he was somewhat doubt-

full



full of that, which the said *dela Nove* had observed, and told him, that his wives belly was big, and that she was qualmish & distasted, vomiting every morning, which made him suspect that shee was with childe: whereupon a Midwife told him that there was no likelihood, nay it was impossible to thinke that a young woman of eightene yeares of age should be with child, her husband having never entered within her maiden cloister: & that with thre shing onely at the barne doore, she could not be full. Whereupon *Master Pietre*, was sent for, who though at first he could not be induced to beleve it, yet at length, having well considered thereof, gave his judgement, that she was with childe, which proved true, for about some foure Moneths after the incision was made, she was happily delivered at her full time of a faire daughter.

*Mad. Scaron* sent for me to helpe a Farmers wife, Another story, that was great with childe, and ready to lie downe who had had the outward orifice of her wombe, for the space of foure or five yeares, so perfectly closed, glued and joyned together, that it was impossible to put a little probe therein: the which had happened unto her, by being ill delivered, by meanes whereof, the entrance of the outward necke of the womb, had been exulcerated, and the ulcers cicatrized, and the sides of the said necke joyned together: and yet for all this she proved with child. At the time of her delivery, by the advice and counsel of *Master Risler*, and *Charles* the Kings professors in Physicke, and *Regent Doctor* in the faculty of Physicke

sicke at Paris, Brunet, Paradis, Riollan, Fremin, Rebi-  
gois, and Serre (*Quene Marguerites Chirurgion*) *Au-  
ton, and Choffinet*. Master Barber, Chirurgions at Pa-  
ris, Honore the Kings Chirurgion, and my selfe, I  
say by the advice of all these, there was an incision  
maid, then presently the *Speculum dilatatorium* was so  
well applyed, that all the Cicatrices were enlarged,  
which succeeded so prosperously, that within three  
houres after she was delivered with much ease.

The delivery  
that is too soon  
or too late,  
doth prove dif-  
ficult.

4 The travaile may likewise prove difficult, and  
painful, when the woman is delivered before or af-  
ter her time; before her time, as when it comes in  
the sixth, seventh, or eighth Moneth: which hap-  
pens when the wombe is too moist and weake, or  
else full, and as it were stuf with much slime which  
doth so moisten the necke thereof, that it is enlarged  
and dilated before the limited time. As also the  
vessels, to the orifices whereof, the after burthen is  
fastned, do begin to be relaxed, which causeth that  
the child cannot bee supported nor remaine in his  
naturall situation. By which change, finding the in-  
ner orifice loosened, & enlarged, & the membrane  
wherein the waters are contained, and in which  
the child swimmeth, to be very small, and thinn: it  
begins to break, which maketh the child out of or-  
der, and so causeth difficult delivery. As also too  
much drynesse, as it were, want of nourishment,  
when the mother is not well nourished, having not  
wherewith to sustaine the child, which makes the  
said childe, not having sufficient nourishment, to  
turne and winde himselfe seeking about for it, and  
casts

Effect of too  
much drines.

casts it selfe downe, and unlooseth his bed (which is the after-burthen) from the sides of the womb; and in the end breaks the membrane wherein the waters are contained, and striveth to come forth for the most part out of order. The like hapneth to them that goe to the tenth or eleventh moneth; because the childe through the length of time that it stayeth in the mothers wombe, doth grow and wax bigger, though the parts of the Mother whereby the child (being thus big) is to come forth, and passe through, are not increased or enlarged at all, which causeth (the passages being not able to bee sufficiently dilated and widened) great anguish and paine to the Mother especially, shee being weakned in all her parts, that serve for the expulsion and bringing forth of the child; which among the rest are the Matrice, and the Muscles of the upper belly; which being stretched beyond measure, through the greatnesse and bignesse of the child, do enlarge the fibres, which cannot afterward be so easily drawne together, having lost their proper force and strength.

And this may be manifestly perceived in those that cannot make water; the bladder being too full, that although the passage bee opened by a probe, yet the Chirurgion is constrained to presse the belly, so to helpe the fibres of the Bladder, to close and fold themselves together. Besides, the childe filling up all the space that is in the wombe, cannot helpe it selfe so well in thrusting forward, being as it were fettered and lockt fast therein.

A good observation.

3. The

Causes from  
the childe,

3 The like hinderance of delivery may proceed from the child, who having attained unto the ninth moneth, is not able to come into the world, either through weaknesse or feeblenesse; or because hee is not perfected and ripened as hee should, and so hath not sufficient strength to dissolve the ligaments and vessels; and to break asunder the membranes, wherein hee is enclosed: which causeth, that after he hath strived in the ninth moneth, and attempting it againe in the tenth, he is not able to strive so lustily for his comming forth, having been weakned with forcing himselfe the moneth before. And it is most certaine, that the childs staying in the wombe after the ninth moneth, doth proceed only from want of vitall heat, which is in the heart; or that he hath it not in sufficient quantity to desire the aire, which wee draw in to coole us: or that all the parts of his body are not strong and able enough to draw unto them sufficient nourishment.

A double conflict of the child

Why the child is staid from comming forth.

Another cause of difficult delivery.

Divers situations of the child

This difficulty of delivery happens also when the childe is either sicke or dead, and is not able to helpe it selfe: as likewise, when he is too bigge in all his body, and chiefly in the head: or if hee be a Monster, having two heads, two bodies, foure armes or legges: or if they be Twins, the one hindering the others comming forth: which will be evident by the bignesse of the Mother: or if he be ill placed to come forth, putting formost an arme, or a legge, or both; the shoulder, buttocks, side, or belly comming formost.

4. Now concerning that which is annexed to the child, the delivery proves difficult, if the membrane that contains the water, whereon the child doth float and swimme, be firme, solide and hard, that it cannot but very hardly bee broken: or that the said membrane bee so thin, that it breaks too soon, and before the childe bee well turned, and ready to follow the said water, which serves to carry him and make him come forth the easier: For the childe that remains dry, commeth into the world with much paine.

Cause from things annexed to the childe.

Likewise, if the after-burthen offer it selfe first, and that it stop the passage: or if there be a Mole, or false conception: As also if the woman have not bin lately at stoole, or made water; the which is cause, that the great gut being full, may close the necke of the womb: as likewise the Bladder being full may presse it downe, because it is placed betweene them both. Whence it is commonly said in the proverbe; *Quel enfant est si ne enter le boire & le manger*, which is; That the child is seated between the meat and the drinke. And therefore all the aforesaid accidents must be remedied accordingly.

The retention of excrements hinders the delivery.

### CHAP. IX.

*The manner to helpe women that are delivered with difficulty.*



That a woman which is delivered with difficulty, and much paine, may be helped: the Chirurgeon ought to know what is the cause thereof, and from

Direction for the Chirurgeon

P

whence

whence this difficulty doth proceed : that he may the better cure it.

If it be, because the Mother is too grosse or fat, and chiefly in her naturall parts, as also if there be any store of fat offer it selfe, (as I have seene it oftentimes happen in great striving and throwes,) yea, and that in such sort, that it did even stop the passage of the childe : Then the Chirurgion (as gently as he can possibly) must thrust backe, and put aside with one hand the said fat, not tearing or hurting it, lest it bee spoiled and corrupted afterwards ; holding it still downe on the one side, till the childe be come forth of the wombe, keeping it alwayes from falling downe into the passage, and among the bones, when the childe is ready to come forth.

Meanes to help them that are too fat.

Considerations for the Bladder.

But when part of the Bladder is sunke downe and relaxed, and is manifestly perceived in the entrance of the wombe : then must he doe the like, as he did to the fat, holding it aside upward with the flat of two or three of his fingers, untill the childs head be past the *Os Pubis*. If he finde then (as it may so come to passe) that the said Bladder bee full of urine : the woman in travaile not having made water a good while before ; then must hee cause her to make water, by putting a fit instrument gently into the Bladder. For it is seene in some, that the fibres which doe contract the Bladder, and make it drive out the urine, are so weakened, and also the whole body thereof, that the urine cannot come forth.

The woman must be provoked to make water.

An observation

Some

Some women have beene deceived, by taking the said bladder, thus full with vrine, for the waters which come before the child, causing the said bladder to be broken: the which is worthy of great consideration. Also the said necke of the bladder may be stop't, by reason of some Carnosity, Inflammation, or stone, which I have seene an honest woman, there being a stone fallen down into the neck in her bladder, that stopt her urine, which being put aside by the probe, shee made water: Nevertheless, when the childe was ready to come forth, the stone returning into the said necke of the bladder againe, did so fret and hurt it, through the long stay, that the childs head made in the passage, that it grew to an Impostume and suppuration, which made a little hole, through the which shee hath long time made her water, not being able to hold or retaine it; which is a story worthy to be marked. But as the urine may bee sometimes stop't, so likewise the excrements of the great gut may be retained: which hapning, it will be more then necessary for the cure thereof, to give the woman a Clyster, that may both unload her, of her excrements, and likewise helpe and make her delivery the more easie.

A thing worthy to be noted

A notable story

The excrements must be voided

Another story:

I my selfe was present at the travaile of a poore sicke woman, that had not beene at stoole in ten daies before, whose great gut was so filld and stufte with excrements, as hard as a stone, that it was impossible for her to receive a Clyster; and wee were constrained, before she could bee delivered, to get

out all the said excrements otherwise it had been impossible to have taken forth the child.

To help and succour one that is leane and barren, or else of little stature, as also such as are either too old, or too young: they must have recourse long before hand, unto medicines that shall mollifie, moisten, and relaxe; not onely the membranes, which ought to be dilated and stretched, that they may be made more souple and gentle; But likewise you must annoint the Cartilages, and Ligaments that joyn the *Os pubis*, *Sacrum*, *Os Coccyg.*, and *Ilium* which must be done with oyntments already set downe, and even in the very houre of the delivery, annoint all the said parts therewith.

Some mislike not, about the end of the ninth month, to bathe the woman, either with a generall or particular bath, as wee have heretofore appointed: as likewise to give her, every morning, eight or ten daies before her lying in, this Drinke.

A Drinke ro  
mak: easie  
the delivery.

- Take Oile of ~~Sweet~~ Almonds, drawne without fire, an ounce water of Parietary, two ounces, mingle them together and let her drinke it.

The which I have oftentimes tried in many women, and amongst the rest in *Mrs. Cappe*, who before had beene many times delivered with much paine and sorrow of her children dead. But since I counsell'd her to use this medicine, she hath been delivered (thanks be to God) very fortunately of many children living. The same remedies do likewise serve for them, that have any Callositie, or hardnesse, in the passage of Nature.

The



Lib. 2. *the happy Delivery of Women.* 117

The weak and dainty women must be fed with yelkes of egges, cullis, a rost with wine and figar, or Hypocras: and that a little at a time, and often, you may also give them a little confection of Alhermes dissolved, either in wine or Hippocras: Cinnamon water also that is well made, and not too strong, is very fit and good.

*Remedy for the dainty.*

And if the feare of the paine doth hinder the delivery, then the woman must be encouraged, telling her that she shall be quickly freed from this sickness, and that it is common unto all women, to have such paines, cherishing her with good hopes, assuring her that her travaile will bee very easie, and promising her, that she shall have either a sonne or a daughter, according as you know shee desires, as we have said before, flattering and soothing her as much as you can, without chiding or giving her any crosse speeches at all.

*Feare of paine.*

*A good device.*

The most grievous and troublesome accident, which a Woman can have, that is in travaile, is when there happens unto her, any fluxe of blood, or Convulsions; for either of them kill both the Mother and the child instantly; especially, if the fluxe of blood continue long; because through the great losse of blood (which is the lives treasure) the spirits and heate are dissolved.

*Cause of the most troublesome delivery.*

And concerning Convulsions, they are very dangerous; because the braine being hurt, it cannot afford such store of spirits as are needfull, for the respiration of the Mother, and the child, who breathes onely by means of the spirits, that are im-

*Why Convulsions are dangerous.*

parted unto him by the Arteries of his mother, which causeth him to be choked & stifled. Besides, the great convulsion, makes the Midriff, and the muscles of the upper belly, move so violently, that the child is much shaken, and puts both him and his mother in danger to be stifled, and die.

What must be done in fluxes and convulsions.

Either of these accidents happening, or else both together, the mother and the child must be succoured without any delay, which shall be done (to speak in a word) by delivering her. And this ought to be done, either by the helpe of a Chirurgeon, or else of a very skilfull Midwife.

Lib. de iſperſatione.

A good ſentence of Hippocrates.

Hippocrates well observed it, when he ſaith. If in a difficult travaile there happen a great fluxe of blood, without any paine before the travaile, then is there danger lest the childe come forth dead, or that he will not live, and therefore she must be ſo dainely delivered, the which we have oftentimes ſeene (to our great griefe) happen unto divers women, that have died through the obſtinacy of their friends and kinsfolks; yea and ſome alſo through their Phyſicians and Chirurgeans feare, who delayed the time, thinking, and hoping that the fluxe would ſtay: telling them that the child came naturally, being well placed, with his head forward and that the mother ſhould bee delivered even of herſelfe,

I know there be many both Phyſicians and Chirurgeans, that will appoint divers inward, and outward medicines, yea to make revulſion and alter the courſe of blood, will cauſe a veine to bee opened

ned in the arme once or twice: rather than consent to this practice. But yet of all their medicines, I could never see any that did good, but that in the end they were constrained to use the hand: the which I counsell to be done speedily, and chiefly if the Mother bee at her full time, and ready to lie downe; which may bee both knowne of the woman, and also perceived by the throwes she hath, or which went before; as also by the dilatation of the inner Orifice of the wombe, which will bee open: and likewise feeling with the finger, that the waters are gathered, and ready to come and issue forth. And when the water shall bee broken and come away, then so much the rather must the child be taken out; though the woman have not gone above foure, five, six, seven or eight moneths. And yee must note that if the said water be not broken, and that the flux of blood be very great, then you shall let forth the water, by dilating and stretching gently the inner Orifice of the wombe: thereby to draw forth the childe, as we will shew hereafter.

A good observation.

Sometimes the waters must be let forth.

But because many women are subject to a flux of blood in their fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, or eighth moneth of child-bearing; being not as yet ready to be delivered: therefore the Chirurgion must observe from what place this blood is sent, the which may bee from the entrance of *Vagina* of the wombe, and not from within the body thereof, where the childe is contained and inclosed, which may be easily perceived, if the woman have no throwes, or if the inner Orifice of her womb be not open,

Caution concerning the flux of blood.

When they  
mult not be de-  
livered in a  
flux of blood,

open, but close shut; then there is no likelihood of any delivery towards, for blood may issue and come from the said outward necke or *Vagina*, both in Maid and Woman with childe: If it be so, then it will not bee needfull to meddle with such women, or to force them at all, but only you must proceed to medicines that shall stay the said flux of blood. As we will shew in the Chapter of the after purgings that flow immoderately in women newly Delivered.

A worthy sen-  
tence of Hippo-  
crates, Lib. 1. de  
Mylh. Natur.

It may also happen because the woman is Plethorickall, and full of blood: In this case we must follow the opinion of *Hippocrates*, who saith, that if a woman that is in travaile cannot be delivered, and that her paines continue many dayes: if shee bee young, lusty, and full of blood, you may let her bleed in the foot, if her strength will beare it.

Other acci-  
dents that may  
hinder the deli-  
very.

Other acci-  
dents that may  
hinder the deli-  
very.

But if she be troubled with any ulcer, tumour, excrecence of flesh, Hemorrhoides, inflammation, chapps, or the like, which may chance in the necke of the wombe; then shall she be handled, as we will shew in their proper places. All the which indispositions may make the delivery difficult, and cause, that the parts cannot be dilated, according as it is fit and necessary, for the childes coming forth.

Other acci-  
dents that may  
hinder the deli-  
very.

For remedying the delivery, that is too sone, or too late: we must have regard unto the cause, and according thereto it must be cured, and chiefly that which shall concerne the Mother; wherof we will treat when we come to speake of the Abortment: it being my purpose in this place to speake onely

## Lib. 2. the happy delivery of Women.

121

onely of those things which are fit, and ought to be done in the time, and at the houre of the deli-  
verie.

Now for the comforting of a woman, and easing of her travaile, when the difficulty doth proceed from the child, as when he is weake, tender, sickly, or dead: as likewise if he be too big, or a monster having two heads, or if he be ill turned, and that he offer himselfe amisse: then the Chirurgion in this case shall helpe, and set to his hand in this manner.

First, if it be through the weaknesse, or tender-  
nesse of the child being sicke: the Chirurgion must not delay one minute of time, to hasten the deli-  
very, and hee must encourage the woman to doe the like. If the head come first, then shall hee proceed therin gently, as in the naturall delivery: applying beneath, and chiefly about the fundament, and *Os Pubis*, which are the two utmost parts of the natu-  
rall passage, some ointments with the fingers ends, having his nailes pared very close. For this annoin-  
ting will provoke and stir up the Matrice, to thrust out the child. The oyntment is this.

Cure when the  
fault is from  
the child.

When the deli-  
very must be  
hastned.

Ointments  
made for the  
purpose.

Ointment

Rc. *Axang. Anser. Gallin. sēpius in aq. Arthem. lot.*  
*an. ʒ i s. Axung. porci recent. ʒ i. Butiri recent. ʒ ii.*  
*Mucilag. sem. Lini, Cydonior. in aq. Sabinae, vel Ar-*  
*temis: extract. an. ʒ vi. Ol. de Castor. ʒ i. Gallie:*  
*moschat. ʒ i. Ladani ʒ i s. Libethi ʒ s. misce omnia*  
*simul pro liti.*

Hee for his part must encourage the mother, gi-  
ving her a little *Confectio Alkermes*, and likewise let  
her take this Clyster.

Q

Rc. Bis

A Clyster.

℞. *Bismal. cum Radic. Matricar. Mercur. an. m. i. aristoloch. nostrat. Diſtanni. Artemis. an. m. s. Flo. Lavandul p. s. sem. Lini. ſæmugrec. an. ℥ s. fol. ſeme mundat. ʒ vi. fiat omnium decoctio, de qua cape quart. iiij. in quibus diſſolv. Diophaenis. Hiera ſimplic. an. ʒ iiij. Ol. Rutac. Cbeyrin. an. ʒ ij. fiat Clyſter.*

Shee may also take this drinke, which I have knowne to doe good to many.

A Drinke.

℞. *Cort. Caſſiſtul. contus. ʒ s. Cicer. rub. m. s. Diſtann. Aristoloch. rotund. an. ʒ j. fol. ſeme mundat. Hermodactil. an. ʒ ij. fl. Lavandule ʒ s. fi. Decoctio in aqua Artemis. & Petroselin. ad ʒ iiij. in quibus diſſolve Cinnamomi. ʒ i. Croci. gr. vi. fiat Potio: this potion is to be given in extremity.*

*Amatus Luſtanas* doth much commend this medicine.

Amatus Luſtanas

℞. *Cinnamomi. Troch. e. Myrrha an. ʒ s. Croci ʒ i. excipiatur cum vino generoso.*

*Rondeletus* doth praise this.

Rondeletus

℞. *Sem. Lavandul. ʒ ii. Sem. Endiu. Plantag. an. ʒ ii. Piperis ʒ i. fiat pulvis Aq. Caprifol. Endivie an. ʒ ii. fiat Potus.*

Another.

Lebel.

*L'obolus* approveth this drinke, and saith that it will even expell, and bring forth the dead child.

℞. *Confect. Alkerwi. sem. Lavandul. Endiu. Plantag. an. ʒ ii. Troch. de Myrrha. Borac. an. ʒ s. Castor. ʒ i. Aq. Artemis. Buglos. vini albi an. ʒ ii. fiat potus.*

Ano-

Another.

℞ Borax ʒ i. s. Cinamomi ʒ ij. Croci gr. iij. fiat pulvis  
 & cum aq. Arthemis ʒ vj. fiat potus.

CHAP. X.

*Of divers deliveries wherein the operation of the hand is used. And first, what the Chirurgion ought to consider before he sets to his hand.*



When the Chirurgion shall bee called to deliver a woman that is in travaile, and cannot be delivered naturally; before he venter to doe any thing, he must consider two things: the first is, to know whether the mother have strength enough to endure the violence of Manuall operation: and having found that she is able, he must then search whether the childe be dead or alive, for sometimes the childe is taken dead, and sometimes alive out of the mothers wombe.

Two things must be considered in these deliveries.

Now as concerning the Mother: First the Chirurgion must behold her face, heare her speake, observe her doings, countenance & behaviour; then presently must he feel her pulse, which if he find to be equal, strong, not intermitting, and that she be not much changed from her wonted disposition; and likewise if the poore woman, her friends and kinsfolkes doe intreat him to helpe her, assuring him that she will courageously endure all that he shall

Considerations concerning the Mo. her.

Q 2

The Mother  
doth hazard  
her life in the  
delivery.

shall do unto her : then following the advice of her kinsfolks and friends, he must go about it : foretelling them neverthelesse, that this kinde of practice is very dangerous, and that the Mother venters her life, seing that the childe is either dead, or else likely to die if he be not already.

Remedies must  
not be dissa-  
med.

But if the Chirurghion finde that her face and speech is decayed and weakned, her countenance changed, her pulse small frequent, sometime intermitting and formicant : and that shee hath often swoonings, Convulsions, and cold sweats : then hee must forbear for feare least he bee blamed, and thereby discredit those meanes which should have profited, and may also doe good unto others.

signes of the  
childes being  
alive.

Now you may know by these signes whether the child be alive or dead. If the child stirre, it is a signe he is alive ; which the Mother may conjecture, and also the Chirurghion, by laying his hand upon her belly. And for the berter assurance hereof, hee must slide up his hand into the woman's Matrice, and search for the childs Navell. If in holding it betweene his fingers, he feele a beating of the Arteries ; as also if by laying his hand upon the childs temples, or else handling the wrist, or sole of his foot, he finde that the Arteries doe beat, and likewise, if in putting his finger into the childs mouth he perceiveth that he either sucke, or wag his tongue, it is a signe that he is alive.

Signes that the  
childe is dead.

Contrariwise, if the foresaid things doe not con-  
curre, and that the Mother feele a heaviness, and  
that in turning of her selfe, (whether it be on the  
right



right side, or the left) the child doth fall like a bowl, if her belly be cold, and that there come an ill sent from her, if her breath smell strong, and her countenance looke wan, and of the colour of Lead, and that the childs Navell, or after-birth offer it selfe foremost, besides, if the Chirurgion, putting his hand up, finds the child to be cold, without pulse, neither sucking, nor moving his tongue : then I say it may be judged that the childe is dead.

But as the childe may offer himselfe, being dead, in divers positions, or fashion ; So likewise must we use divers considerations and meanes to draw him forth : as we will more particularly shew hereafter,

The child cometh after divers fashions. }

CHAP. XI.

*The meanes to helpe a woman in travaile, having withall a flux of blood, or Convulsions.*



WE have shewed you before that a woman being in travaile, and having either a flux of blood, or Convulsions, she must be speedily helped, because the deferring or delay thereof will endanger her life.

Wherefore you must proceed herein after this manner. And since that in every delivery, the situation is a matter of great consequence, to make it the more facile and easie : therefore you must begin in this sort,

Situation for all deliveries.

Q. 3

First

The right placing of them.

The Commodity thereof.

First, the woman must be laid overthwart a bed; both for the better conveniencie of the Chirurgion or Midwife that shall deliver her, and also that she may be held and stayed behinde the faster, by some strong body, so that shee neither slip forward nor backward, in the operation or drawing forth of the childe. Likewise, there must be one on each side of her to hold her knees & thighs firme, and to keepe them asunder one from another: her knees must be bowed, and her heeles drawne upward, as wee have said before in the naturall delivery) her head must bee laid upon a bolster lying cross the bed, her backe being a little raised, and her hips lifted somewhat higher, with pillowes laid under them, and her hinder parts must lie within halfe a foot of the beds side. She must have a linnen cloth three or foure times double laid upon her stomacke and belly, that may reach downe over her knees even to the middest of the legges: So that neither wind nor cold may offend her, nor any of the assistants see what the Chirurgion toucheth, or doth; and likewise that the woman bee not afraid of him, when he shall be about his businesse. And therefore *Hippocrates* for this reason would have the womans eyes shut or covered.

When the woman is thus placed, the Chirurgion must put up his hand (being first anointed) into the first entrants of the naturall parts, that he may take forth all the clots of blood, which hee shall finde there.

Then he must consider whether the inner necke

be

The clots of blood must be taken away.

be wide enough for him to thrust in his hand, and to turne the childe, if it bee needfull: Now if the inner necke benot sufficiently dilated, then shall he, as gently as possibly he can, and without any violence (having first annointed all the parts thereof with fresh Butter, or some ointment) stretch it by little and little, till he get in his hand: if the water be not broken, he need not bee afraid to let it out: then presently if the childe come with his head formost, he shall turne him gently to find his feet, which he may doe more easily, then if the waters had been let forth before: because, that much moisture doth make the child slide, and turne better, than when he is dry. And when he hath found one of his feet, hee must draw it gently without violence, and tie about it a piece of ribband, with a sliding knot, that hee may put the foote in againe (leaving the ribband hanging out) to make the more roome for his hand to get in, and search for the other foot, which may bee done by sliding his hand all along the childs thigh. And having found them both, hee shall draw them out gently in a direct line, giving the woman a little breathing, and bidding her to straine herselfe when shee feels any throwes, or paines, then the Chirurgion (having in a readinesse a fine linnen cloth warme, hee must wrap it about the childs thigh, for fear hee slip out of his hand, if hee take him naked) and so plucke gently, till his buttockes appeare, and the body with the head doth follow; observing nevertheless, that his belly and breast be turned

The inner neck may be dilated.

How the feet may be found.

ned downward, as wee will shew hereafter more particularly.

Experience will make it manifest unto us, by the stories following, how necessary it is to deliver a woman with child, when a flux of blood, or convulsions do continue: and that she cannot be saved by ordinary medicines.

A story.

The yeare 1599. *Madam Simon* yet alive, daughter to *M. Pareus*, Counsellour, and chiefe Chirurgeon to the King; being ready to lie downe was surpris'd with a great flux of blood, having about her *Mad. la Charomie* for her Midwife, and likewise *M. Hautin* the Kings Physition in ordinary, and *M. Rigault* Doctors of Physicke in Paris, and because of great swoonings that took her every quarter of an houre through the losse of blood shee had: *Master Marchant* my son in law and my selfe were sent for; But I finding her almost without pulse, having her voice weake, and her lips pale: I told her mother and her husband that shee was in great danger of her life, and that there was but one way to save her, which was, to deliver her speedily: the which I had seene practized by the late *M. Pareus* her Father, who had caused me to do the like, unto a Gentlewoman of *Mad. de Seneterre*. Then her mother, and her husband earnestly intreated us to help her, and that they would put her into our hands to dispose of her: And so sodainely, following the advice of the Physitions, she was very happily delivered of a liuely child.

The Chirurgi-  
on must foretell  
the danger.

Another story.

The yeare 1600. I was commanded to goe and visit

visit a great Lady, that was taken with a great and violent flux of blood, through a fright she had of a great thunder-clap: Being come unto her, I found that her flux was much mitigated; but shee being constrained to goe twelve or fifteene leagues from *Paris*, and fearing lest that the said flux should continue, she was brought thither by my soune in law, Master *Marchant*, by water: where she was no sooner arived, but her flux of blood tooke her againe, which made him dislike it, and judge that it would prove ill, contrary to the opinion of Master *De la Riviere*, the Kings chiefe Physitian, who was there at the same time: Whereupon I was presently sent for in post, together with Master *Renard* the Kings Physitian. We being come thither, found things in better estate; and the said Master *De la Riviere*, tooke leave to goe towards the King. But on a sudden the said flux began afresh, which made them send for M<sup>r</sup>. *Marescot*, and M<sup>r</sup>. *Martin*, the Kings Physitians, who notwithstanding were not come before her delivery: which the kinsfolks & friends of the said Lady, and likewise M<sup>r</sup>. *Renard*, M<sup>r</sup>. *Marchant* and my selfe, were of opinion to hasten, because of the great losse of blood she had, and the often swooning that rooke her: but as soone as she was delivered, the flux of blood ceased.

They must rest  
in a flux of  
blood.

The yeare 1603. *Madam Danze*, or *Chece*, being in travaile, was taken with the like flux of blood, which held her from morning till eight or nine of the clocke at night; having with her the Queenes Midwife, *Madam Bourfere*, M<sup>r</sup>. *Le Fleuve*, *Ridau*,

The third story:

R

Le

*Le Moine*, regent Doctors in the faculty of Physick at *Paris*, and *Mr. de Saint Germain* Master Apothecary, were called to looke unto her; and because she lost much blood, they called Master *Honore*, the Kings Chirurgion, who being unwilling to attempt any thing without my advice, I was likewise sent for. And as soone as I was come, my opinion, with the rest of the company, was to deliver her: which was done by the said *Honore*, the childe living.

The fourth History.

Of late memory *Mad. Coulon*, (being assisted in her travaile by *Mad. La Charonne*, a very skilfull Midwife) having a great flux of blood; after that *Mr. Martin, Flantin, Cornuty, Pietre*, the Kings Physicians, and Doctors of *Paris*, had given her many things for the staying of the said flux, in the end for feare lest by losing her blood, shee might also lose her life, falling into a syncope: with their advice she was delivered by the said *Honore*, and presently her flux was stayed.

An admonition for young Chirurgions.

But as these women and children aforesaid have bene saved, by being delivered in time: So likewise these following lost their lives, because they were not succoured, as art and experience did require, their kinsfolks & friends being unwilling to have any goe about it in due time: whereof these two Histories may beare witness.

Another Story.

*Mad. Vion* being ready to be delivered, fell into a great flux of blood, and though some were of opinion to deliver her without further delay; yet this being deferred upon the counsell of others, who

## Lib. 2. the happy Delivery of Women.

138

who hoped to stay the flux with ordinary medicines, they suffered her to loose her blood, by little and little, and at last to loose her life. The same chance hapned to *Madam Gasselin*, who not having help in time, dyed, even as it was foretold, it would come to passe, having lost all her blood, before she would give her consent to be delivered: which will be a good occasion, to admonish a young Chirurgion, never to deferre this worke when he is called, and sees a great evacuation of blood. It is now five and twenty yeares, since I saw this practised, by the late *M. Pareus*, and *M. Hulert*, of whom, wee are bound to acknowledge and willingly confesse, that we have learned both this and many other experiments.

*Mad. de Mowaror*, being about five and twenty yeares of age, and neere her time of delivery, one day found herselfe ill, about foure or five a clocke in the morning, neverthelesse she rose and went to Church, which was neere her house, her paine by fits began againe, and shee fell into a continuall flux of blood: At three daies end shee was delivered with great ease, without any helpe of the Midwife: and presently after, followed the after-burthen: Neverthelesse shee died the same day, at night: and was kept a pretty while by her friends, who could not perswade themselves, that shee was dead: At last being opened by *M. Pineau*, the kings sworne Chirurgion at Paris, in the presence of *M. Faber*, and *M. Ballou*, regent Doctors of the faculty of Physicke, at Paris; her wombe was found

Another story agreeing with this purpose.

R 2

broken, & rent, right in that place, where the veine and artery hypogastricke, ascend toward the mid'st thereof; which likewise were dissolved, and gave way to all that issue of bloud.

As for the convulsions which commonly happen through the child's great striving, when hee desires to come forth, & (not being turned aright) doth so extend the womb that the said convulsions follow thereupon: here it is to be feared, least all within, will be torne and broken, and therefore it is convenient to deliver the woman, with al possible speed, which have beene practized both by my selfe, and of late by master *Binet* a sworne Chirurgion of *Paris*, a man of great experience, who being sent for by Doctor *Bonnart*, to deliver *Opportune Guerreau*, the wife of *Silvester* the Printer, which had beene in labour from eight a clock in the morning, til nine at night: and finding her pulse very weake and small, as also the woman deprived of all sense and motion, at the first he was somewhat fearefull. But being intreated by her Husband, and fearing least shee might either die suddenly, or else fall into convulsions: he putting his hand into her wombe, found the child's head (the water not being broke) which he let out, and presently delivered her with much ease, and shee is yet living. Therefore wee need not expect, til the said convulsions grow stronger, for fear least the womb be broken, and torne through the great striving of the child, when hee is not able to come forth, as wee may plainly see by the stories following.

Stories concerning convulsions.

The Chirurgion's wisdom.

The



The yeare 1607. the said Master *Biaet* was sent for, together with *de le Moine*, and *Alou* Master *Barber* Chirurgion at Paris, to cut up the dead body of *Ioue du Boys*, and having opened her nether belly, found the child upon the guts, who had brused and broken the wombe, and passed quite through it, there being store of blood-shed in the capacity of the said belly.

A wonderfull story.

Master *Pineau*, *Guerin*, and *Launay* sworne Chirurgians of Paris, can beare me witnesse, that in opening a poore woman, that died in the Hospitall of the Citty, we found her child swimming among the guts in her belly, the bottome of her Matrice being rent and torne.

Another story.

CHAP. XII.

The means to helpe a woman when her after-burthen comes foremost.



**B**f the after-burthen offer it selfe foremost; the most sure and ready way to helpe the Woman is to deliver her speedily, because most commonly there followes a continual fluxe of blood. For that the orifices

When the after burthen comes foremost, there is a fluxe of blood.

of the veins are opened, which are spread in the sides of the wombe, and there meete with the vessels of the afterburthen: & when the Matrice doth straine and force it selfe, to put forth the childe, then doth it thrust out both the blood that is contained ther-

R 3

in,

How the child  
is stifled.

in, and that which is drawne thither, either by any heat or paine. Besides, when the child is inclosed in the wombe, and the orifice thereof, stopt with the after-birth: then he cannot breath any longer by his mothers Arteryes, & so for want of help he will be quickly choked, and even swallowed up in the blood, which is contained in the womb, and which issueth from the veynes that are open therein.

Observations  
to draw forth  
the afterbur-  
then,

But before you attempt any thing, these two points must be observed: First, whether the after-burthen bee come forth but a little, or else very much: if it bee but little (when the mother is well placed) it must be thrust, and put back againe with as much care, as may possibly bee. And if the head of the child come first, let it bee placed right in the passage, thereby to helpe the naturall delivery; but if you find any difficulty, or if you perceive that the childs head cannot easily be brought forward, or that the child, or his mother, or both together bee weake, foreseeing that the travaile will bee long, then without doubt the best and surest way is, to search for the feete (as we have said) and to plucke him forth gently by them.

Another ob-  
servati<sup>o</sup>n.

The other point to bee observed is, that if the said after-birth bee much come forth, and that it cannot bee put backe againe: as well by reason of the bignes of it, as also of the fluxe of blood, that commonly companies it: and likewise if the child follow it close, staying onely to come into the world: then must the after-burthen be puld away quite, and when it is come forth, it must bee laid a-

When the after  
birth must bee  
drawne forth.

side

side, without cutting of the string that cleaves unto it. For by the guiding of the said string you may easily finde the child, who whether hee be alive or dead, must be drawn out by the legs, with as much dexterity as may be. And this must be done onely in great necessity, that the child may bee quickly drawne forth: as it may be easily judged by the sentence of Hippocrates, who saith *that the after-burthen should come forth after the child, for if it come first, the child cannot live, because he takes his life from it, as a plant doth from the earth.*

*Lib. 2. de Morb. Mulier.*  
The after-birth must come last.

Sometime it chanceth, that a part of the after-birth, as also the membrane which contains the waters doth offer it self like a skin, and comes forth sometimes the length of halfe a foote; which happens to such women at have the skin wherein the waters are contained swelling out to the bignes of ones fist and more, which breaking forth of themselves, leave the skinne hanging forth, and yet the child not following it, which happening, it must not be violently puld away: because the afterburthen oftentimes, is not wholly loosened from the sides of the wombe. So that in drawing that, you shall likewise draw the said after-burthen, and so consequently the womb, or else part therof, which commonly brings the woman into extreampaines, and fainting, yea and oftentimes to death: Which hapned (to my great griefe) unto a Gentlewoman, that died as soone as she was deliuered, who putting her selfe into her nurses hands, who tooke upon her to be a Midwife, and was so ventrous, as to

It must be puld Gently.

A Story.

pluck

plucke and draw forth the said membrane, and part of the after-burthen, which came to light by means of her Chamber-maid, who had kept it, and shewed it us after her decease, we being very inquisitive to know the cause of her death.

The remedy.

But when this happens it must not be pulled away but rather gently be thrust in againe, or else you may put in your hand betweene that and the neck of the wombe, to find the childs feet, and so draw him forth, as we have shewed before.

I have set downe this Story more at large by reason of the great sorrow I tooke for this Gentlewomans death, whom I had delivered twice before with mine own hands, comming not soone enough to helpe her the third time.

### CHAP. XIII.

*The means to Deliver a woman, when her child is dead in her wombe.*

**W**hen it is certainly knowne that the child is dead, the woman must be placed in the same manner as it hath bin shewed, where wee spake of the taking forth of the childe, when there is a flux of bloud.

What must be done when the child comes ill.

If he put forth an arme, shoulder, backe, belly or other part of his body first, he must be turned with all diligence, and drawne forth by the feet, as wee will more particularly declare in every severall delivery, according to the sundry fashions wherein he may come, either alive or dead.

If

If he come dead, with his head forwards, & that there is no hope at all of the womans delivery without helpe, and that her strength begins manifestly

*The woman must be speedily helped.*

to decay: the surest way is to apply the hand. And then the Chirurgion shall thrust gently his left hand being wide opened, betweene the childs head, and the necke of the wombe: and with his right hand he must put betweene the said head, and flat of the hand, an Iron Crochet, such a one as you see here figured unto you.

*The figure or portrait of the Crochet, wherewith the dead child may be drawne forth of his mothers belly when hee comes with his head forward: the which is so locked within the os pubis, that it cannot bee displaced or pushed upward, to turne and draw forth the child by the feet, without much hurting the mother, and often endangering her life. It will likewise serve to take forth a head that remaines alone in the wombe: It must bee tenne or twelve inches long, strong, and thicke, and large enough to take hold.*

Which must bee fastned to the side of the childs head, as about his care, or bone of the Temples, or in some other place if it may be done

S

conve-



Skill in drawing forth the child.

conveniently, as within the hollow of the eye, or the hinder bone of his head, the Chirurgion keeping his left hand in the same place where he put it first, and therewith he shall wagge and stirre gently the childs head: and at that very instant, with his right hand wherina he holds the crochet, so fastned, in any part of the head, must he draw and bring out the child: bidding the woman strive and force her selfe, as though she would be delivered alone. And it is to be noted, that the Chirurgion must take his time; to draw him forth, when the woman falls into throws, for while the throws continue, the child slides forth the easier.

Observation in using the Crochet.

Oftentimes it chanceth, that the Crochet cannot be put high enough at the first, to draw forth the head all at once, so that after it is come forward and drawne out in part, they are faine to take away the Crochet, from the place where it was first fastned, and put it in againe to take new hold higher in another place, which the Chirurgion may doe very fitly, as it hath beene shewed already. Likewise, if the Crochet be not well, and surely fastned at first but that it slip, and lose the first hold, then it will bee needfull to fasten, and put it in a surer place.

The child may be surely drawn out by the shoulders.

Having drawne forth the head, and the Crochet being taken out, the Chirurgion shall slide in his fingers very cunningly under the childs armpits, that he may draw forth the shoulders, and the rest of his body, for by this meanes he shall bee easier drawne out than by the head: which must be done

very

## Lib. 2. the happy deliverie of Women.

139

very leasurely, without any violence, giving the woman leave to gather her strength, and expecting till her throwes come upon her.

While the Chirurgion is about this worke, they must give the poore woman, a little wine, or else let her suck a taste sopt in wine, or Hippocras: perswading and incouraging her, that she shall quickly be delivered.

This manner of drawing the dead child out of the mothers womb, is safer, and speedier, then that which is used by turning and putting backe the childs head, to finde his feet, and so pull him out thereby. For whensoever the childs head is much entred within the *os pubis*, it is impossible to thrust him upward and turne him without much indangering the Mother, and causing great contusion in the wombe, from whence proceeds divers accidents, and sometime death, as I have seene it often happen.

Safe way to draw the child by the feet.

Inconveniences to turne the child.

I know some will alleadge, that they have taken forth children alive, which were thought to have beene dead; in the mothers wombe, with the *sa* Crochet: and that they have presently dyed, onely with the hurt they received by the Crochet, and certainly this is a cruell kind of practice. Wheretofore I answer, that we must diligently looke, and consider, whether the child be alive or dead, before we put in the Crochet, and if there be any appearance of life, wee must deferre the taking of him forth therewith, as long as we may: But being dead, I see no reason but we should take the child forth; with

Considerations in using the Crochet.

S 2

the

Question whether the Crochet may be used.

the said Crochet, for the causes heretofore mentioned. But if the childe be alive, it is a great question whether he ought to be pulled forth by the Crochet, presupposing that the Mother, having lost her strength, is ready to die, except this meanes be used: it being more expedient to lose the Mother than the childe, who would both die if that were deferred any longer: and whether to save the Mother, (who is more deare than the said childe) this practise may be ventured. But as I thinke, there are none that goe about this businesse but with some touch of conscience, which being a point of Divinity, I leave to be decided by them that are more conversant therein than my selfe.

#### CHAP. XIV.

*The meanes to draw forth a childe that is swolne and puffed up in his mothers wombe; together with the manner of drawing the head when it stays behinde.*

The dead child swells, and is puffed up.



If the dead childe continue long in the Mothers wombe, he may easily be putrified, and not only his head, brest, and nether belly, swolne and filled with wind and water, but likewise his legges and feet will be puffed up.

The child that is alive may likewise be swolne.

This swelling and puffing up may also happen through all the childs body, though he be alive, having either the *Hydrocephale*, or swelling of the head; or the drop sic, either of the lungs or belly;

or



or else being *Leucoplegmaticall*. This accident hapning when the childe is alive, he must bee hel- ped as being alive, not delivering the Woman to the childs losse. But if he be dead, and ye perceiv



that his head, breast, or nether belly is swolne, or fill'd with wind or waterish matter, then the Chirurgeon must put up his hand carrying in the hollownesse of it a little crooked knife, very sharp, made after this fashion, & with the said knife he shall divide and cut the part wherein the wind and water shall bee enclosed; (whether it be the head, breast, or belly) which being let forth, the childe will grow lesse, and afterwards he may the more easi- ly be taken out.

*The forme of the Knife to divide the swolne part, which must bee of this bignesse here described, that it may the better be carried w<sup>th</sup> his ones hand to the place that must bee cut or opened, whether it be the head, breast, or belly.*

It may so happen, that the childs arme coming foremost through the long stay it makes with- out, as also because it hath bin pulled by violence,

will be swolne, yea, and even gangren'd, that it cannot possibly bee thrust backe againe, that the child may be drawne forth by the feet: If it fall out to be so, then the arme must bee pulled out as farre as it can, and if it may be done conveniently, let it be cut off at the joynt of the shoulder, or else as neare unto it as may bee; the bone shall bee cut off with sharpe cutting pincers, or else sawed off very eavenly, the skin and muscles being put aside, that so the bone may bee covered with the said flesh, muscle and skin which will fall over it; and also that the bone through his roughnesse and hardnesse may not hurt the sides of the wombe, the stumpe that was cut or sawed, being put backe againe.

Sometime the child's head will not follow the body, either because of the bignesse thereof, or else because the child is ill turned, that in drawing him forth, he chanceth to have his belly, stomacke, and face lying upward: which causeth that the body being wholly come forth, while they would also draw forth the head, the chinne takes hold of the *os pubis*, and being pulled violently, the body onely is drawne, and the head not moved, sticketh fast.

For the remedying whereof, that the head stay not behinde; the body must be gently turned, placing the face downward: (as wee said before) for by this situation, the head being moved up and downe, will be easily drawne forth with the rest of the body, by holding the body with one hand, and

## Lib. 2. the happy delivery of Women.

143

and putting a finger of the other hand into the childs mouth.

And when the head sticks, the Chirurgion must thrust his left hand into the wombe, and put his fore-finger into the childs mouth, to stay the head, which by reason of the roundnesse of it, and moisture of the wombe, rowles and slideth up and downe, not being easily stayed; then with his right hand let him put in the Crochet, which must be hooked or fastned either in the temples, hole of the eare, hollow of the eye, or else in the mouth; and then let him draw the head gently, both with the Crochet, and also with the left hand, having his fore-finger in the childs mouth, and so bring him forth as cunningly as he can; taking his time alwayes when the Mother is in some paine, that so the childe may be the easier drawne forth.



CHAP.

*The means to helpe a woman in her travaile, when the child comes with his head foremost, but having his necke awry, and his head aside.*

## CHAP. XV.



**B**

eing now to speake of Births that are contrary to nature, we will beginne first with the Head, as being the worthiest, and most notable part of all the body. Sometimes the childe comes (as he doth naturally) with the head foremost, but it is placed amisse, which may

may bee after foure severall fashions; either the head lying upon the backe, or upon the stomacke: or else upon the edge of the shoulders, inclining towards one of the Mothers flankes, which makes that the childe cannot come forth straight, and in a direct line: because his necke is bowed, and stands awrie. He being thus turned, it is very hard, yea, even impossible, that the Mother should bee delivered; either through any indeavour of the childs thrusting his feet against the bottome of the Matrice: nor by any labour of the woman, forcing likewise and straining herselfe, as much as shee can possibly; by holding in her breath. But contrariwise, the more the childe strives to come forth, and enjoy the outward aire, the more he intangles and wreathes his necke, so at the last, both his strength, and the Mothers, are together much weakened, through the paine they both suffer: the childe being in danger, by reason of the great compression that must needs follow the wreathing of his necke; and also by the hindrance of respiration, though he breathes onely as yet by the Arteries of his Mother; untill the after-burthen bee loosened, for then he takes breath at his owne mouth. The Marrow also of the backe, and the sinewes (being the instruments of motion) may thereby be so pressed together, that the animal spirits may be intercepted; which depriveth the childe of all motion, and consequently of life: wherefore, it will bee very necessary to help him speedily, which ought to be done in this sort. First, let the Mother bee placed

B. B. B. B. B.  
 B. B. B. B. B.  
 B. B. B. B. B.

When the Mother and the child strive in vaine.

How the child breathes.

T and

How to find  
which way the  
childs head  
leaneth.

and held after the same order we prescribed for the helping of them, that are troubled with a great Flux of blood. Then the Chirurgion, having his hands annointed (as wee said before) shall put up his right hand, being open, as gently as he can possibly, to finde on which side the head doth leane, and is turn'd: if the childs head leane upon his breast, his hand will meet first with the backe, if it bee turned toward the backe, then hee shall light upon the breast: or if the head leane upon one of the shoulders, then hee shall finde the other first, which will also be inclining somewhat toward the womans flankes; which when he hath found, before he goe about to remove the head, and bring it into his naturall situation, which is to place it directly over against the necke of the Matrice, hee must first with the ends of his fingers, thrust upward the body of the child, either by the shoulders, or backe, or by the breast: for by this meanes the head of the child, will not leane so hard against the sides of the wombe: so that his necke will even come of it selfe to the right place. And for the better help, the Chirurgion at the same instant shall slide in his other hand (yet not taking out the former) wherewith finding the place where the head doth rest, and leane: hee may easily draw his hand toward the side of the childs head, and so shall hee bring it gently to the naturall place: and by this meanes, the childs head will rest betweene his hands, to be set right. The like also may he do, by putting his hand gently, toward the hinder part of  
the

Way to bring  
the head  
straigh.

the head, and to set it right, having first thrust the childe upward, either by the backe or breast: the which is seldome done, because it is a surer and readier way to thrust him up by the shoulders: and to say the truth, the childs head is oftner turned towards the Mothers flankes, then either toward her belly or her backe.

Another way.

CHAP. XVI.

*The meanes to helpe a Woman in travaile, when the childe comes with the hand and arme together, with the head foremost.*

**T**He childe should come into the world with his head forward, and if there be any thing that comes with it, it is contrary to nature. If the hand and arme offer themselves, and come forth of the wombe, this travaile is contrary to nature, and therefore dangerous, because the arme takes up the roome the head should have, & hinders it from coming right; according as it is turned, either to the right side, or to the left, or else upward, the head leaning upon the backe: or downward, being placed upon the breast, (as we shewed in the last Chapter, when the necke stands awry) which unlesse it bee helped in time, it will bee very hard for him to come safe into the world. For the hand and arme coming forth, by reason of their tendernesse and softnesse, being never so little crushed or held in the aire:

The hand coming forth hinders the delivery.

The arme coming forth, falls into a Gangrene.

Inconvenience of drawing the childe by the arme.

The practice.

they are quickly altered and spoiled; and will bee swolne and puffed up exceedingly: yea, and sometime fall into a Gangrene, which I have often seene come to passe: and therefore it will be very necessary to redresse it speedily.

But especially the Chirurgion must take heed of pulling the said hand or arme; because it is impossible he should draw him out therby: For how much the more the arme is thrust, whether it bee by the mothers, or the childs striving, or else by the Chirurgion, who labours to pull it out, so much the more will it make the head and necke to bow and bend, either toward the stomacke, backe, or sides; it being impossible that the head and arme should come forth both together, because the said head is so enfolded and engaged in one of the said places: and therefore this order must be observed herein.

First, the mother must be laid upon her backe, her head and necke lying somewhat low, and her hips somewhat raised: then the Chirurgion having his hands oyled, (as before) shall anoint all the womans parts with that hand, which is most fit, according to the divers situation of the childe. If the hand onely come forth, hee shall take it at the top of the wrist, and so thrust it backe as high as he can, guiding it all along the sides and flankes of the childe, and having placed it there, he must pull backe his hand; to give place to the childs head, which at the same instant; with his other hand, must bee brought and put right against the necke  
of



of the wombe: And the bearer to fet it a right, he must, with both his hands being spread abroad, and placed on each side the head, thrust the shoulder upward with the ends of his fingers (as we shewed in the former Chapter) that the childs head may be set in the middle: which will be easie for him to doe, in taking the childs temples of his head, betweene both his hands, and by that meanes set it strait. And when this is done, let him suffer the woman to rest her selfe a little, assuring her that her childe is well placed, and that by and by he will come naturally into the world: The rest shall bee performed, as we have shewed in the naturall delivery; placing the woman after the same order, as hath bene said. But if it chance that the childe be dead, and that the arme bee Gangren'd, and so swolne, that it cannot bee put backe, then must it be helped in the same manner as wee have shewed before, which ought to be done with all speed, for feare of the putrefaction that may happen unto it.

The woman must be heated.

CHAP. XVII.

*There beanes to helpe the travaile wherein the child comes with both his hands, and armes, and head for most.*

**M**Any men are of opinion that the travaile wherein the childe puts formost both his hands and armes, is not so dangerous and difficult as the former, when there is but one.

Comparing of the two sorts of deliveries.

cause when both the armes come thus stretched out, the head is found just in the midst of the



passage. But since that both armes must be put back againe, as in the former, before the child can come into the world, (it being very hard and dangerous to draw him forth by the armes) it hath made mee alwayes thinke that this kinde of delivery is more troublesome and dangerous than the former.

The delivery where both armes come foremost, is not so dangerous.

Notwithstanding this may bee said to bee lesse dangerous for the childe, because howsoever hee strive to come forth, and for all the throws that the Woman can have, yet the child cannot stretch or turne his necke aside. But yet to say the truth, it is  
more

more troublesome, both for the Mother, and the Chirurgion, yea, and sometimes for the childe also.

But the best way to proceed herein is, that the Chirurgion, after he hath placed the woman (as is aforefaid) (having his hands annointed, as also the parts of the Woman, he shall gently put in his right hand, and bring one of the childs armes to his due place, by stretching it out at length, along by the flankes and thighs, & presently withdrawing that hand, he shall thrust in his left, to bring the other arme into his place, as he did the former. This being done, hee shall marke, whether the head of the childe bee placed right, in the meantime suffering the woman to take some ease, not holding her so much backe, as when hee placed the armes of the childe. Then shall hee place her, as in a naturall birth, but if he finde that the head of the childe be turned aside, and be not set dire& against the passage, as it useth to be in a naturall birth, then shall he gently put in both his hands joyned together, & presently opening them, he shall touch onely with the ends of his fingers, both the shoulders of the childe, and put him backe easily toward the bottome of the Matrice: and being so put backe, the head of the childe will come between his hands, which he shall easily place aright against the passage (as is aforefaid) by taking both sides of his head, or temples betweene his hands, and so the delivery shall be performed naturally.

The practise.

ed. Arm. 1617  
- 1630  
- 1640

## CHAP. XVIII:

*The meanes to helpe the mother when the child comes with one, or both feet for most.*



Whensoever the child, comming into the World, doth put one or both his feet for most, the Chirurgion shall place the Woman (as it hath been oftentimes told,) and having his hands annointed, let him chuse whether he will draw the child forth by the feet: or else if he thinke it better, to put back either one or both the feet, and so turne him, and bring his head straight to his passage. For my part, I thinke it the better and safer way to draw him forth by the feet, then to tur n' him upside down, and lift his feet upward, thereby to bring his head downward to the passage. And therefore, whether he come with one, or both his feet forward, the greatest care must bee to know how his whole body is placed, & lies in his Mothers womb: as whether his face & belly be turned toward the mothers backe, and his shoulders, backe, and buttocks towards her Navell: likewise whether his armes bee separated from his thighs, flanks, and sides, which ought also to be diligently observed in al births that are contrary to nature, especially in those, when the child is drawn forth by the feet: For when you draw him out of the womb,

with

What must be observed concerning the child.

with his buttockes, backe, and hinder parts of the head, turned toward the backe of the Mother, and his face toward her Navell, and belly, then without doubt the feet, buttocks, body and shoulderts of the child being drawne forth, when the head commeth to the *Os pubis*, it will hang therein: which being so caught, it will be very hard, nay impossible, to draw forth the child: and if you draw him too violently, it is to be feared least you breake his necke, especially if the childe be too big, or his head great. Therefore when you have drawne him by the feet till hee is come forth, as farre as the buttocks, and wast, before you draw him any further, you must marke diligently the position of the body, whether the bell breast, and face, be upward or no. For if he be so placed, before you draw him any further, you must turne him upside downe which you shall performe, if you hold him fast by the buttocks, and hips, with both your hands, and turn the whole body (withall drawing it gently) and so bring the belly, breast, and face downeward, which being done you shall draw him forth with ease, without danger of staying, or carrying the head upon *Os pubis*: which must needs happen, if the child were drawn with the face upwards. And this have I well observed, being called to the deliverie of some women, where this chance, (for want of good heed taking) hath happened, the head sticking within, and putting us to great trouble, to draw it forth. Beside, when the body is thus situated, if both the armes be stretched out above the head, you shall bring

An observation  
when the two  
armes are  
stretched out.

V

downe

downe one of them close to the side, and let the other stay stretched out, that when the shoulders are come forth, the said arme may be as it were a stay, or splint to the necke, for the passage of the head, to hinder the passage from shutting or closing up, and fastning about the neck of the child, and so hinder the child from coming forth, notwithstanding oftentimes the childe is so slender and little, that so soon as the shoulders are come out, presently the head followes after, and needeth not the help of an arme, to bee a rest for the necke.

Now the Chirurgeon when he hath thus observed, and marked the situation of the child, or else having after that manner put him backe, if he find the child may bee easily turned by lifting his feet upward, and bringing his head downward, he may gently make triall of it. But if he find that there is any difficulty therein, then the best and safest way is to draw him forth by the feet. Therefore, if but one of his feet come forth, he shall tie a riband about it, that if it bee needfull to put it backe againe, to search for the other, he may the sooner find it, and draw it forth. For it were enough to teare the child asunder, and so kill both him and his Mother, to draw him forth by one foot. Therefore, whether the first foot hang out, or whether it be somewhat put backe againe, let it serve for a guide to find the other, the Chirurgeon putting his hand all along the said leg and thigh even to the *Perineum*, neere the which he shall bee sure to find the other thigh, and afterward the leg and foot, (unless you meet with

The safest way  
is to draw the  
child forth by  
the feet.

How to find  
the child's feet.



one of them first, as commonly it falls out.) But the surest way is to do it the first way, (that is to find the thigh first.) because oftentimes there are two children, which if it should so happen, then might you take one foot of the one, and another foot of the other: & thinking that they were the feet of one child only, without doubt in drawing them forth

V 2 after



You must not  
hold the child  
naked.

after that manner, you would kill them both, and put the Mother likewise in great danger of death, because it would be impossible to draw them forth both together. And you must observe, that to draw a child well, out of his Mothers wombe, you must have a napkin, or some other linnen cloth, that you may not hold the child naked, either by the feet, thighs, or other part of the body: but let it be with a warme cloth. for your hands being annointed, and greasie, and the child being also moist, he will easily slip from betwene your hands, and you shall

not



not take so strong hold as is fit, for to bring him forth. And yet it may happen that the inner necke An observation of the Matrice may not be so wide, as to give way to the Chirurgeons or Midwives hand, without great difficulty and paine, the passage being not bigger than to admit two or three fingers, by which nevertheless it is found in what manner the childe cometh. If you observe that one foot or both come foremost, you must proceed according to this example.

Being at Moret with Count Charles, I was called, A Story. together with the late Mons. de La Corde, one of the Kings Physitians, to deliver a poore woman which had bin in travaile two dayes and two nights: the waters being broken, and the childe left dry, the necke of her Matrice was closed, she being no more urged with paines or throwes, which I observed by slipping up my hand unto the said necke, and getting two of my fingers therein, where feeling one of the childs feet, I perswaded my selfe that I should deliver her well, which I did in this sort.

First, when I had placed her well, I anointed my hands with butter and Hogs greafe melted together, and with store thereof I anointed the inward necke of the Matrice, as well as possibly I could: and when I had somewhat dilated the said necke, with three of my fingers, I cast a riband with a sliding knot upon the childs foot, fastning it gently; and then againe dilating the said necke, I found out the other foot, upon which I slipped another riband, as I had done upon the former: Then

did I draw both the ribands, and brought the two feet together, which when I had drawne out unto the buttocks, I beganne againe to aduise, as before, then taking a napkin, lest it should slip, I had the woman force her selfe as much as shee could possibly, especially when shee felt her paines and throws comming: and then drawing forth crines directly, and sometimes to the one side, so to enlarge the passage, I drew on the child gently, turning the belly thereof downward, that the chin might not catch in the *Ospubis*, as I have noted before.

Sometimes the child comes not with his feet, but



with his knees forward, and in this case the Chirurgion shall use the same art as before, considering

first, whether it bee fitter to bring the childs head formost, or to draw him out by the feet. If he will draw him out by the feet, he shall bring him into the foresaid situation, that is, to let the face of the child be turned towards the Mothers backe, and his backe toward her navell: then shall hee unfold or unloose the legges that were bowed and bent; and shall draw them forth first and then the rest of the body in this sort. He shall slide his hand from the knee of the childe, along the shinne, till he come to the foot, which hee shall draw forth, and tie a small riband about it, and put that foot in againe, letting the riband hang out: The like shall he doe to the other foot, and so shall hee easily draw out the two feet. Then let him draw forth the thighs and buttocks; and if the childe lie with his belly, breast, and face downward, and his buttocks, backe, and shoulders upward, let him instantly draw gently out the rest of the childe, (as we have said before. But if he be placed contrariwise, hee must turne him gently, the face downward, lest otherwise the head take hold upon the *Os pubis*, by the chinne, as we have said before.

How to draw him forth.

The child must be turned.

I have often repeated this fashion of drawing out the childe, for feare lest the young Chirurgion erre in performing it otherwise, which if he should doe, he will be much troubled in drawing out the head, which may sticke by the way, as I have seene it happen.

## CHAP. XIX.

*The means how to helpe a Woman when her  
childe commeth with both the feet and  
both the hands together.*



**T**He childe comming into the world may offer  
himselfe to the necke of the Matrice in divers  
fashions

positions: as (beside those that have beene spoken of) with both the feet and hands foremost: the buttocks, backe, and head of the childe, being so bent and bowed against the bottome of the Matrice, which doth presse and thrust him downward, that the said hands and feet come forth with such violence, that it is a fearefull thing to see, and full of danger, because of the difficulty to remedy it; the Matrice bearing downe it selfe in such sort, and to no use; it being impossible that the childe should be borne whilest he is thus situated. And therefore it will be necessary in this case to give helpe with as much speed as may be: The practise whereof is in this manner.

A terrible kind of delivery.

First, you shall place the woman as we have said before: then the Chirurgion having his hands appointed, as is required; if the child be alive, he shall first with his right hand to put the feet into the Matrice, making them slip up as easily as he can to the bottome of the said Matrice, and with his left hand shall hee stay the hands that they come not forth further: the feet being thus thrust backe, presently he shall either put one of his fingers into the childs mouth, or else take him by the hinder part of the head, to bring it direct against the passage; in the meane time putting backe with his left hand, the childs hands and armes, that they may fall close to his sides: then taking the head between the palmes of his hands, he shall place it just against the passage: Which being done, the birth will succeed naturally, both by the helpe and striving of the

Meane to help the travail.

the child, and also by the endeavour of the Mother, when she feels her throwes come upon her.

A surer way to draw forth the child.

And if the child be dead, it is to be drawn forth by the feet.

But when the Chirurgeon shall finde, that the feet, legs, and hands cannot be put backe, and that the Matrice doth beate downward, and shut it selfe, not suffering the feet to slip up, then must he, with all the Art he can, put back with his left hand, the childs hands, and with his right hand draw the feet gently, taking heed that the childs face and belly may be downward, and so draw out the child, as hath bene shewed before.

And if the child be dead, it is to be drawn forth by the feet.

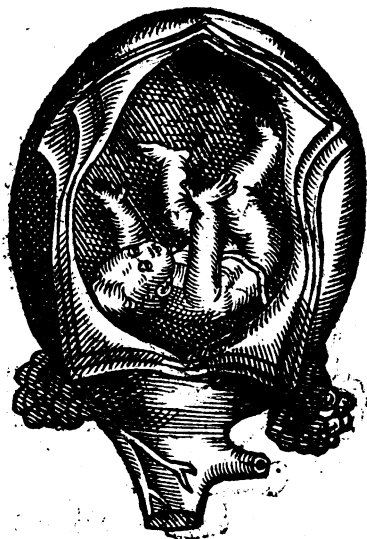
Likewise if the Chirurgeon find that the child be dead, he must draw him forth by the feet, without troubling himselfe to bring the head of the child to the passage. For every dead child, because he is not able to give any helpe to the birth, but that all the labour is to come from the Mother, is oftentimes the cause of her death. And therefore the surest way is to turne him so, that he may be drawne out by the feet, or else with the Crochet.

The Authors opinion.

As for my selfe, I am of this opinion, that it is better, whether the child be dead or alive, if he come with his feet and hands foremost, that the Chirurgeon bring him forth by the feet, then to turne him, and bring his head foremost, and so expect a naturall birth: for in this bringing, the Mother being bin much wearied, and the child much weakened, the delivery (though it be naturall) will prove very long and difficult, in regard, that neither the Mother nor the child can have much strength left them. Whereas, if you draw him forth by the feet,

feet, neither the Mother, nor the child being much weakned, the birth will be the more easie, and fortunate; As I have alwaies had experience.

The manner how to helpe a Woman, when her child comes double, putting formeft, either the sides or the Backe, and Shoulders, or else the Buttocks.



**B**Eside the former delivery, which is, when the child comes double, putting his hands and feet formeft: there likewise happen divers other births that are no lesse difficult, and dan-

dangerous: For when he comes side-long, with his Sides, Backe, or Shoulders next the passage, his feet must needs be on the one side of the Matrice, and his head on the other, lying quite crosse; so that the child, bearing on both sides; with his head and feet against the wombe, doth extend, and stretch it to no purpose, whereby the Mother growes weak and faint: which neither she, nor the child can long indure without danger of death; because his striving helps not at all for his comming forth.



A dangerous  
situation.

The like may happen, when the child puts out his thighs, and buttocks foremost: which kind of birth is very painefull and difficult, because the child

file



falls all the Matrice: Which the Chirurgion percei-  
ving, he shall consider, whether it be better, to turn  
the child, and bring formost his head, or else his  
feet: if he can easily bring the childs head unto the  
passage, he shall proceed in this sort.

First, he shall put in his right hand ( being an-  
noiated as before ) to turne the child, and having  
found the shoulder, with the palme of his said hand  
he shall lift the child upward, that his feet or knees  
may be toward the bottome of the Matrice, whil't  
the head falls and slides downward: and shall hold  
it fast at the orifice of the womb, with his left hand,  
being put in at the same instant; and by this means  
shall bring the Armes close to the thighs, and sides  
of the child, that the Woman may be naturally de-  
livered. But if the Chirurgion finde any difficulty  
to lift the body upward, for the bringing of the  
head downward: then shall he slide his right hand  
under the childs arme pit, and so draw him gently,  
yet not making the arme come forth, to place the  
head right against the passage.

But if the Chirurgion find any hinderance in bring-  
ing the head downward, and that he thinkes hee  
can more easily guide and bring the feet to the ori-  
fice of the wombe, then the best and surest way  
is to draw him forth in that sort, by the feet: and  
certainely when the child comes with his buttocks  
formost, his head being upward, then may you soo-  
ner meete with his feet and bring them easier to  
the orifice of the Matrice, to bee drawne forth as  
wee have shewed before. But when hee puts his

shoulder or backe foremost, then may you the more easily lift him up to make his head slip downward, or else take him by the Arme pit, and so bring gently his head to the necke of the wombe, to deliver him naturally.

CHAP. XXI.

*The manner of helping the delivery wherein the child comes with his belly and breast foremost.*



**P**He most troublesome, and painfull situation of a child in his mothers wombe, is when he comes with his belly foremost, putting out his navell, his legges and armes being turned backwards: For when he is placed in this manner, and strives to come forth, he thrusts against the sides of the wombe with his hands and feet, and so boweth backward, and bends the backe bone, that he brings himselfe as it were into a circle, whereby he endures and suffers much paine, and likewise is weakened exceeding much, unless he be speedily helpt: and besides, by his compression & striving, hee causeth the mother to endure much paine, and anguish, without any profit at all: both which doth require to be speedily redressed, which may be performed in this sort. First the Chirurgion



rurgion shall place the woman in good order (as Meanes to help  
hach bin said) & then shall he slide up his right hand the childe,  
(being first anointed) to observe and feele what  
part of the childs body is nearest, which hee shall  
perceive both by his feeling, and by wagging and  
stirring the childe up and downe : If the breast be  
next

next, he shall take (with the said hand) the child by the shoulders and top of the arme, bringing him thereby gently downward, afterward lifting up his hand, that the childs head may fall right towards the passage, putting in presently his left hand to receive and set strait the childs head, which may be turned on the one side, and that being done, the delivery shall be afterwards performed naturally.

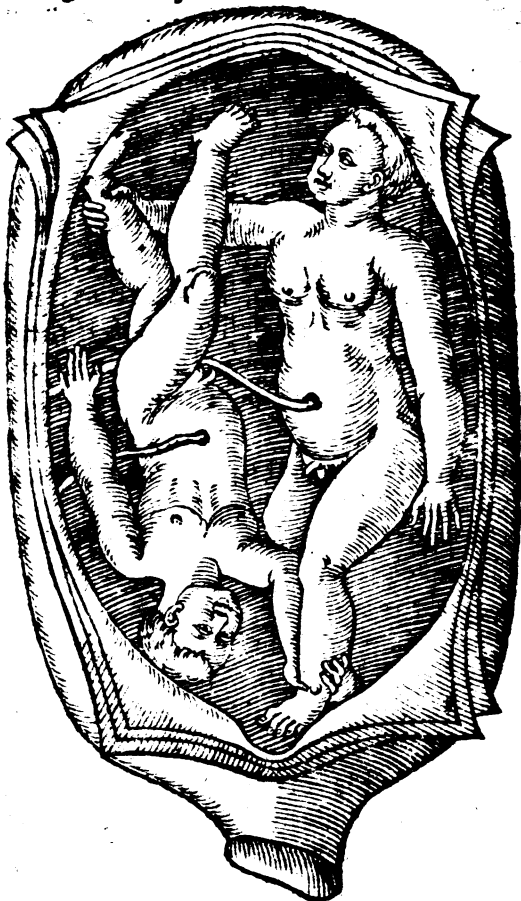
Another confidencation.

But if the head cannot be easily brought downward, or that the belly and top of the thigh be nearer unto the passage, then the Chirurgion shall put his right hand along the childs thigh, to finde one of his feet, which being found, he shall cast about it a riband, with a sliding knot, and then shall he seeke for the other, and bring them both gently to the passage, and so draw him forth by the feet, taking hold of him with a warme napkin, betweene both his hands; observing alwayes that his face and belly be downwards, for feare lest when the shoulders are come forth, the chinne catch upon the *Os pubis*, as we have shewne more at large in the Chapter of delivering the childe with the feet formost, to which place I refer you, shunning often repetition.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

*The woman to helpe the birth, when there be twins, the one coming with his feet the other with his head foremost.*



**I**T cannot well be perceived alwayes, whether  
a woman beares two children, though she be in  
travalle :

One may bee  
safely delivered  
of two chil-  
dren.

travaile : for I my selfe was present not long since as the delivery of an honest woman, who brought two children : and when she was delivered of the first, the Midwife (not expecting that there was a second) was ready to draw out the after-burthen, but that I perceived another offer it selfe, at the passage, which as it came naturally, so was shee delivered thereof very fortunately. But if it so fall out, that the twins doe come, the one with his head, the other with his heeles formost, then the Chirurgion shall behave himselfe in this sort :

How hee must  
deliver the wo-  
man when the  
twins come ill.

First he shall consider, which of the two children the woman may be easiest delivered of. If the head of the one come not so forward as the feet of the other, it will be easie to draw forth that childe by the feet, putting the others head a little aside, and when he hath brought that forth, he must presently set the head of the other right against the passage, and encourage the woman to bee delivered, which will the easier be done, because the other hath prepared the way.

And if it happen, that in delivering the first by the feet, the second should change his situation ; then the Chirurgion shall looke after the feet, and draw him forth, as he did the former. And when the head of the first is very forward, then shall hee thrust backe the feet of the second, to give way to the others head, that he may come naturally.

The way to de-  
liver a woman  
of two twins.

If the heads of both the children come together to the passage, the Chirurgion must take great care, for it is impossible for him to make them come forth

forth both at once, (except they bee very little.) And therefore he shall put up his hand to try, whether both the heads are placed in one, and the same line, and point of distance (as commonly it happens) or else whether the one is further forward then the other: And especially hee must obserue whether the two children be monstrous, and unnaturall, or no. As whether there bee two heads upon one body: or if they be ioyned together, either by the backe or by the belly, as it is often seene, which he may easily perceive, by sliding his right hand open betweene the two heads, putting it as high as he can, to feele the division; and then drawing his hand downe againe gently between the two heads hee shall thrust aside the one to give place to the other, which hee must bring right to the passage, leaving the second nevertheless in his naturall situation. And when the woman feelles her throws come upon her, then shall hee by all meanes bring forward, the former that hee would receive, holding downe the other, with two or three fingers of his left hand (least hee should offer to come forth) and shall endeavour onely to bring the first into the world. Which being done; if the second bee not well situated, he shall bring the head forward right to the necke of the Matrice, and being brought thither, hee may easily come forth, because the way hath bene prepared, and made ready by the former. But you must observe, that the first being come forth, hee must bee taken from betweene his mothers legges, for feare least he indanger his life;

His Navell  
must be tyed.

but you must first tye the navell, as we have shewed. And besides it will bee very necessary and fit before it be cut, to tye the rest of the navell string, that is fastned to the after-burthen, with a large and strong thred, that it may thereby be the easier found and drawne forth afterwards. For the threed that binds the Navell, being left too short, it may slip into the womb, and thereby much trouble the mother: When the second childe is come forth, the Chirurgeon must search whether there bee two afterburthens, or no. And if it happen that after the second delivery, the two after-burthens should not come away so soone as they ought: then must they bee provoked, for feare least the Matrice being emptied of two children, might chance to sinke downe, and shut it selfe close together, thereby as it were to retain the said after-burthens, & by this means hinder the delivery of them, which must be remedied, as wee have shewed before. If the two children should have but one body, I am of opinion that for the performing of this delivery, it would be a more easie and safe way, to turne the head upward, and draw him forth by the feete, than to make him come forth with the head formost, having an especiall care, when hee comes forth as far as the buttocks, that you guide and draw them forth with all the art you can possibly: at which kind of delivery, I my selfe was never present.

The afterbur-  
then must be  
taken away  
speedily.

CHAP.



CHAP. XXIII.

*The meanes to helpe a woman in travaile of Twins, their feete comming formost.*



**A**S two twins may chance to offer themselves with their heads, so likewise sometimes they may happen to come with their feete formost.

When this chanceth, the Chirurgien ought to observe, whether the twins bee separated, (as wec said before) or whether they be unnaturall, as having

Meanes to know whether the child be a monster or no.

ving foure legs, one or two bodies, & likewise one or two heads. Now the best way to find it is, that the Chirurgeon having his hand annointed (as before) slip it up gently wide open: as high as he can, and finding that the twins are not ioyned together but divided and distinguished, he shall bring down his hand betweene one of their thighs, and pulling it a little lower, shall take hold of one of the twins feet, (that which he thinks may be easiest drawn forth) and tye about it a riband, with a sliding knot, towards the Ankle: then shall he put his hand along the said legge, and so even to the buttockes, that thereby he may find the other leg of the same child, and ioyne them together, and not bee mistaken (taking one legge of the one twinne, and another of the other: For if he should doe so, then without doubt in drawing of them forth, he would teare them both asunder: ) but being certaine by this meanes, that both the legges and feet, bee of the same childe, you may draw them forth gently, (as wee have shewed before) taking care that the childe come with his face downward. When you have thus drawne forth the first, you shall in the same manner, proceed to the second: having first taken away (as is said before) the other, from betweene the mothers legges. And if it happen that one of the twins come naturally, with his head foremost and the other with his feet: and that his feet are more forward then the others head: then the safest way will be to draw him forth first, that hath his feet foremost: having first of all put the other aside

When the first is come he must be taken away.]

side that offered himselfe at the passage. But if the head of the one bee right against the passage, and the feet of the other on the one side, then shall hee put backe the feet gently, and deliver the woman first of him that had his head formost, and afterwards draw the other forth by the feet.

It may also happen in each of the former births, that one of the twins may be dead, and the other living. Howsoever they are placed the Chirurgeon must bee very certaine which of them is dead, or alive. Which he shall know by feeling them about the Navell, Temples, or region of the Heart, Hand-wrists, or Ankles, where if hee finde no Pulse, or beating of the Arteries, then hee may be sure that the childe is dead, as also if hee bee lesse hot than the other: and when you put your finger into his mouth, he neither sucke it, nor wagge his tongue: But if you find all these signes concurre, then there is some likelihood that he is alive: and therefore it will be best to bring his head right against the passage, that so the woman may the sooner be delivered, which will be done the more easily, because the live childe can better help himselfe than he that is dead. But if the Chirurgeon thinke that he shall hardly bring the head to the said passage, and that hee finde the feet are nearer and readier, then I would advise him to bring the childe forth by the feet, and when the woman shall bee delivered of the one, let him draw forth the other in the same fashion.

*It must bee knowne which is alive.*

*The meane to know it.*

*How you must draw him out.*

## CHAP. XXIV.

*Of the staying the after-burthen  
after the delivery.*



Oftentimes it happens, after the woman hath beene delivered, whether it be naturally, or by the Chirurgions helpe: that the bed whereupon the childe lay, (commonly called the After-burthen) as being a second burthen or delivery of the woman; because when that is come away, the Mother is wholly delivered, doth remaine fastned to the sides of the wombe, and cannot very easily bee separated from it, and though it be loosned, yet oftentimes it cannot bee put forth: The which may proceed either from the driness of the Matrice, and after-burthen, being destitute of their moisture, or because that it is swolne and stretched, or else because the expulsive faculty of the wombe hath beene much weakned by a long and painfull travaile: Whereunto may be added, that oftentimes the Mother hath beene so wearied, and brought so low, and become so faint, weake, and feeble, that shee is not able to straine or force her selfe at all.

Now it is most certaine, that after the child hath left his Mothers wombe, the said after-birth is a thing contrary to nature, which must needs be taken away and sent forth: And therefore one of these two accidents must needs follow, either that the

The After-burthen may bee kept.

Causes of the retention of the after-burthen.

the quicke ( which is the wombe ) thrust forth the dead, ( which is the after-birth : ) or that the dead kill the quicke. And surely, that being retained, it doth breed in the Mother, most pernicious, and dangerous Symptomes, as swoonings, oppression, and suffocation : yea, and sometimes being corrupted and putrified, it is an occasion of death.

For the preventing whereof, there must be great care and diligence used in the bringing, and drawing it forth : which must not bee done rashly, but leisurely, by often shaking and moving it. In the meane time, taking heed that neither the Mother, nor the wombe, take any cold, for feare lest it be sodainely clos'd and shut up, and therefore, first of all, if the woman be weake, you shall give her, either some Broth; Gelly, yelke of an egge, or else a rost and suger. And you must likewise put in practice, that we have formerly spoken of: as to make her Cough, sneeze, and blow in her hands, holding salt therein : and beside you must give her medicines, that are proper to expell and drive forth the said after-birth; which are such, as wee formerly prescribed, in difficult travaile: as

*R. Saccha. stercor. Ascripte. pul. an. ℥ ʒ ʒ ʒ diffolv in vi-  
no Hippocratico, & fiat potus.* A Drinke to  
expell the  
after-birth.

*R. Troch. de Myrrha, Gall. Mosch. an. ℥ j. Cinnamon.  
℥ ʒ. Dictam. Cretenf. Saccha. rasor. of stant dactyl.  
an. ʒ ii. Piper. Croci. an. ʒ j. fiat pulvis, capiat pro  
dose ℥ j. cum vino Sabelotico, vel cum aqua strile-  
mifida.*

Z

Gesner

*Gesner* in an Epistle he writes to *Gasserus* saith, That the stone of a horse, dried in an Oven, being made into powder, and taken the quantity of a dragme, or foure scruples, is an excellent medicine.

Other experiments,

*Horatius Augensius* reports in his Epistles, that he hath made often triall of it, and saith, that hee had it, of his father, for a secret.

If the afterbirth comes not away for all the fore-said medicines, then must you come to handy-worke: and for that purpose the Chirurgion shall place the woman in the same fashion he did, in the drawing out of the child: then shall he put up his hand: (annointed as before) holding the Navel-string, which will serve him for a guide to find the after-birth; and when he hath found it, hee shall observe and try diligently, whether it stickes to the sides of the wombe, or no: If the said after-burthen cannot come forth, because the passage of the Matrice is too strait, it being shrunk together, and swolne with paine: Then shall she use medicines that relaxe and mollifie, as the liniments appointed in the naturall delivery, and also such as shall be set downe hereafter, together with fomentations, and injections: And when hee perceives that the passage is open and free, and that the after-birth staves onely through the womans feebleness and weaknesse, in these two cases he shall draw it forth gently.

But if hee perceive that it doth stick to the wombe, and likewise finds it soft and moist, then shall

shall bee separate as gently as may be, with his fingers, (his nailes being first paired very close & even) from the sides of the womb, beginning at that end which he thinks doth best cleave or stick thereto, and so draw it by little & little, shaking it sometimes on the one side, and sometimes on the other, not drawing it violently directly forward, for feare (as Hippocrates saith) lest the Matrice should fall downe, and follow the after-birth, whereto as yet it is fastned; putting still betweene the sides of the Matrice, and the said part of the after-burthen, either fresh butter, or some of the liniment wherwith he anoints his hands, that it may helpe, by mollifying and relaxing, to separate it the more easily.

And you must take an especiall care that you draw it not forth suddenly all at once, lest it should sticke to many places of the wombe, and so you thinking to pull it along, might shake & bring downe withit the body of the womb, which would cause a Præcipation or falling downe therof: Or else, if you should separate it by violence, some vessell or part of the womb is in danger to be broken, which may procure a flux of bloud, or some ulcers, whereof may follow a *Gangrene*, yea, and oftentimes death.

If the Chirurgion perceiveth that there is any difficulty or danger to sever and bring forth the said after-birth, it sticking very fast by reason of drittiness, or that the Matrice is very painfull & swolne, then shall he use these Medicines following.

First he shall give these Pills.

Z 2

R. Myrrh.

Pils.

*R. Myrrh. ʒ i. Rad. Aristol. retund. Dillam. an ʒ ij. Castor. assa fetid. Croci an. ʒ i. Gentian. ʒ s. cum succo sabine. & Mercurial. fiat Massa ad dando Confect. Althermes ʒ iij. capiat pro dose ʒ s. vel ʒ ij.*

You may mingle with the said Dose halfe a Dragme of *Pilule Cochle*, to provoke and stirre up the expulsive faculty of the belly, and so consequently that also of the wombe.

Sneezeing expels the afterburthen.

You must likewise provoke her to sneeze, which may be done, according as *Aetius* appointerth, with *Castoreum* and *Pepper* made into powder, you may also use which is stronger.

*R. Hellebor. alb. ʒ s. pip. alb. nigri, an ʒ i. Casto. ʒ ij. Cinaman. ʒ i. fiat omnium pulvis subtil. injiciantur aliquot grana in mater.*

The manner of doing it.

But you must note, that when her sneezing is ready to come, shee must stop her nose and mouth with her hand, that the breath in sneezing may not goe forth all at once, and that it may thrust the more violently downward.

There must be used also this fomentation and injection to the *Matrice*.

An Injection and fomentation for the wombe.

*R. Quatuor Esule. Matrican. an. m. iij. flor. Chamemel. Melilot. an. p. i. Sem. Lini, fenugrec. an. ʒ s. Bulliant in jure vituli. vel Capi, Calatue adle Ol. Amygdal. dul. & chemis tentiam partem, & fiat in velle: Et magno te fiat fetus cum spangia.*

This fomentation and injection hath power to heat and comfort the *Matrice*, and also to make it more



more moist and fit to loosen the after-burthen. At the same time you shall give her this Clyster.

*Rc. Rad. Lilior. albor. Bryon. recent. an. ʒ. ij. Malue; Bismal. totius; Caulium, Matricar. Mercur. an. m. sem. Lina. fenugr. an. ʒ. s. flor. Camem. Meliloi. an. m. i. fol. Sena mund. ʒ. s. fiat decoct. de quib. cape quartar. iij. in quibus dissolve Diaphenic. Hierc. an. ʒ. iij. Mel. Mercur. Ol. Lilior. Aneth. an. ʒ. ij. fiat Clyster.* A Clyster.

You must also cause the Woman to smell unto bad and stinking odours, as old shoes, and Partridge feathers burnt, *Affa fetida, Ruu.* Ill smells.

Some, after the childe is borne, have the veines of the Matrice so swolne that the after-birth cannot come forth by reason of the bignesse thereof, and the narrowesse of the passage: then it will be good to let them blood in the foot, which is a Medicine very often tried by *Massaria*, a great practitioner, and a Professor at *Padua*, as he writes in his Booke of womens diseases, Blood-letting brings downe the after-birth.

If the after-burthen come not away with all the aforesaid medicines, then will it be necessary to suppurate & purrifie it, which I have seene sometimes come to passe: But in the suppurating of it, you must have a care of two things: the first is to strengthen the Woman, and to preserve her from malignant vapors, that may ascend and take hold of the principall parts, as the heart, braine, and chiefly, the stomacke, using other medicines, beside those that have bene formerly set downe. And therefore shee must be comforted with these Medicines. What must be done in the suppurating of the after-birth.

A Cordial E-  
lectuary.

Rc. Cons. Borag. Buglos. Rosar. an.  $\bar{z}$  i. Cons. Anthos.  
 $\bar{z}$  s. Confect. Alkerm. de Hyacinth. an.  $\bar{z}$  i. s. spec.  
lettificant. Galen.  $\bar{z}$  s. cum syrup. Conser. Citri. q. s.  
fiat opiata.

Let her take Lozenges of *Diamargarit*: *frigidum*:  
and likewise of *Piachodon Abbatis*.

She must also have all kind of pleasant and sweet  
favourites to smell to, which may recreate the  
Spirits.

The second thing that the Chirurgeon shall ob-  
serve, is, that in helping it to come to suppuration,  
hee have a care that there bee not bred too much  
corruption: and therefore it will be fit to use mun-  
difying and cleansing injections, adding therby al-  
so Medicines that will comfort the wombe, as those  
that are of a good smell.

Rc. *Malve Parietar. senecion. Matricar. Apii. an. m.*  
*i. Radic. Lilior. Bryon. Cucumer: agrest. an.  $\bar{z}$  i.*  
*flor. Chamemel. Melilot. Hyperic. Centaur. Vtri-*  
*usq; an. P. i. Aristol. nostr. Agrimon. Veronic.*  
*Herba Robert. Mercurial. an. m. i. s. sem. sennugrec.*  
*Cydon. an.  $\bar{z}$  s. fiat decoctio ad lb. i. s. in quibus*  
*dissolve Myrrh. Aloes, Ireas. florent. an  $\bar{z}$  s. mellis*  
*Mercurial.  $\bar{z}$  iii. addendo Aq. Rosar. vinialbian.  $\bar{z}$  ii.*  
*fiat Injectio.*

A comforting  
and cleansing  
Injection.

Hipp. li. 3. Epidem

Hippocrates to this purpose, writes a memorable  
story of a Carriers wife, who had a peece of her  
after-birth left behind in the wombe, (that caused  
her to have the Strangury) which continued there  
even till she was delivered of another child. For at  
the end of foure months, she conceived againe and  
bore

bore her fruit to the full time: which History hath imboldened me to relate this that follows.

*Mary Beauwin*, yet living, Wife unto *William Prat* a Glasier, dwelling in Saint *Andrewes* street, sent for me, (it is some fixe and twenty yeare since) to shew me a tumor that came forth of her Wombe, which was as bigge as ones fist, and more; and was like unto a bladder: as firme and hard, as strong parchment: full of cleare water, wherein one might perceive a pretty hardnesse: the said tumor or bladder would slip up easily, when shee lay upon her backe, and lifted her thighs a little upward, crushing it a little with her hand, (as they commonly do when they put backe a rupture) which she did in my presence, and I demanding of her how long this accident had troubled her, shee told me it had bene so above two yeares, and began at the birth of her second child: and yet notwithstanding she said she had had a little young daughter, about fixe Moneths since, to which shee then gave sucke, and that all the time that she went with child, shee said this bladder fell not downe at all, as it was wont be-fore her last being with childe. I counselled her to call *Mon. Parens* the Kings chiefe Chirurgion, and other Chirurgions, to give their judgement, what this bladder might be: And perceiving, when they had handled it, that it was without paine, they were all of opinion after it was drawne forth, as farre as it could possibly, to have it tyed at the top, and then to pierce it, the which I did; leaving the thred wherewith I tyed it, somewhat long, that thereby I might

A true story.

might draw it forth, when I thought fit. The incision being made, there followed great store of faire and cleare water, and presently we perceived a little *fœtus* or Panty child of a fingers bignesse, somewhat firme and hard; without any bad smell; fastned by the Navell, which was as firme and big, as a pretty string. About sixe daies after, with shaking the said thread, (which had beene likewise gently stirred, every day from one side to the other) the rest came forth: having applyed, in the mean time, many mollifying injections to the wombe, for the loosning of it, from the parts whereto it was fastned.

Lib. 4. Observat.

185.

Another story.

Marcell. Donat.

Rispar. medic.

mirabil. lib. 4.

cap. 22.

*John Schenckius*, in his observations, among divers other stories, tels a very strange one, of a Woman named *Ludivica*, who for her bignesse, was called the great Mare, shee going with a dead childe voided onely the soft parts of the said child, being putrified, the bones staying behind: yet for all this a while after, shee being in reasonable good health, became great with child againe. And falling sicke, there passed by chance, through the towne where she dwelt a certaine Mountebanck or Quacksalver, who made an incision in her belly, and therebyooke forth the bones of the said child, and cured her: And when the time of her travaile came, shee was delivered of a lusty and healthfull child.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

The manner how to take forth a child,  
by the Cesarian section.



T now remains onely that I speake  
of the last kind of delivery, which  
must be practised after the mothers  
decease, that thereby the child may  
be saved, and receive Baptisme. This  
birth is called *Cæsarian à cæso Matris utero*, in imi-  
tation of *Cæsar*, who was ript out of his Mothers  
wombe, at the very instant shee died. The which  
ought to be observed in every well governd com-  
mon-wealth: For, *Iurisconsulti enim necis damnant,*  
*qui gravidam sepelierit, non prius extracto fœtu, quod*  
*spem animantis cum gravida peremisse videatur.* The  
Lawyers iudge them worthy of death, who shall  
bury a great bellved-woman that is dead, before  
the child be taken forth, because together with the  
Mother, they seeme to destroy the hope of a living  
creature.

Lib. 2. § De mor-  
tuo effundendo, &  
sepulchro nondifi-  
canda.  
A Law of the  
Ancients.

In some women, I have made this practise very  
fortunately, and among the rest, in *Mad. le Malre*,  
*M<sup>r</sup> Phillippes* my uncle being ioyned with me: And  
likewise in *Mad. Pasquier*, presently after shee was  
dead, *Monseigneur Pareus*, and the Curate of *S. Andrew*  
being present.

But before the Chirurgion come to this worke,  
he must observe diligently, and bee certainly assu-  
red

What the  
Chirurgion  
must observe.

A a

red

red, that the woman is dead, and that her kinf-folks, friends, and others that are present, doe all affirme and confesse, that her soule is departed: And then he must come presently to the handy-worke, because the deferring of it might cause the childs death, and so make the worke unprofitable.

All the while that the woman lies in her paine and agoay, the Midwife, or else some other woman, shall hold their hand within the necke of the Matrice, to keepe it as open as may be possible: for though wee know that while the childe is in the Mothers wombe, hee breaths onely by her Arteries; yet notwithstanding the aire that may enter therein, doth not onely not hurt, but doth very much good.

Now to know certainly, and to be assured that the woman hath yeilded up her last breath, you shall lay upon her lips, and about her nose, some light feathers; for if the breath never so little, they will flie away.

And being thus assured that she is dead, the Chirurgion, presently without any delay, after he hath laid open her belly naked, shall there make an incision, of the length of foure fingers, neare unto the right Muscles, cutting both the skin, and the three Muscles of the *Epigastrium*, and the *Peritoneum*; piercing even to the very capacity of the belly. Then shall he thrust in two of his fingers, and with them shall he lift and hold up the said skin, muscles, and *Peritoneum*; and betweene them he must make

make a sufficient incision, to discover the Matrice, and the child therein contained, which will easily shew it selfe: Then shall he instantly make an incision, just in the midst of the wombe, which he shall find a finger thick, and more, and therefore he need not be afraid of hurting the child, because I have alwaies observed, that the after-birth is situated next to that place, and then the child. But if there should be any likelihood, that the said after-birth were loosened, and had changed his place, then must he be more circumspect, and warie: And therefore, he shall rather teare and enlarge the incision with two fingers of each hand, being put therein, then cut it, and so make the orifice large enough, according as he thinks fit, for the drawing out of the child, which he shall take forth of the wombe. This being done, he shall take the after-birth, and lay it upon the childs belly, causing some body, to take a little wine in their mouth, and spirt it into the childs nose, eares, and mouth, which must be done often as we have shewed before.

The wombe is thicke.

The way to open the wombe.

Some hold, that this Casarian Section, may and ought to be practized (the woman being alive) in a painfull and troublesome birth: Which for mine owne part, I will not counsell any one to do, having twise made triall of it my selfe, in the presence of *Mons. Pareus*, and likewise seene it done by *Mons. Viart*, *Brunet*, and *Charbonnet*, all excellent Chirurgions, and men of great experience and practice; who omitted nothing, to doe it artificially, and methodically: Neverthelesse, of five

The Authors opinion of this practice.

women, in whom this hath been practised, not one hath escaped, I know that it may bee alleaged, that there be some have been saved therby: But though it should happen so, yet ought we rather to admire it, then either practize or imitate it: For, *One Swallow makes not a Spring*, neither upon one experiment onely, can one build a science.

The Caesarian  
Section, repro-  
ved.

After *Mons. Parans* had caused us to make triall of it, and seene that the successe was very lamentable, and unfortunate: he left off, and disallowed this kind of practise, together with the whole Colledge of Chirurgions of Paris: as likewise the discreeter sort of the Regent Doctours in the faculty of Physicke, at Paris: at such time as this question was sufficiently discussed by the late *Mons. Merchant*, in the two declamations he made, when he had the honour to be admitted sworne Chirurgion, of Paris.

*The End of the Second Booke.*

THE





# THE ORDERING OF a woman newly brought a bed, and of the Accidents, that may happen unto her in her Moneth.

## The Third Booke.

### CHAP. I.

*what diet a woman must keepe that is newly  
delivered.*

**H**eretofore we have spoken of the care that must be taken of a Woman, so soone as she is brought a bed, and delivered of her after-birth: Now we will treat of the diet she is to keepe, while she lies in, and of the accidents, that may befall her in that time.

First she must be kept reasonable hot: for too much heat doth weaken, and dissolve the strength: but above all, she must be kept from the cold aire, because it is an enemy to the spermatick parts, and being very piercing it may get into the Matrice

Cold hurts the  
spermatick  
parts.

which is now empty and there procure great pains and torments, as also puffe it up, and the whole belly: and therefore the doores, and windowes of her chamber in any wise are to be kept close shut.

Dyet.

Her dyet must be thus: First she must live temperately, and not fill herselfe with too much meat: and that must be of the same kind, that is prescribed for them that are wounded; and indeed in some women, there happens a great *Sentio continuu*, and not that only which they call simple, but also that which hath a contusion joynd with it. For in that great striving, and passing of the child, many membranes are not only bruited, and hurt: but also broken, and torne: as it happeneth in young women and in others that are faire in yeares, and never had any child before. Nay sometimes in these, the passage of the Matrice, and that of *Ans*, are brought into one: yea, and some suffer great excoriations, and hurts, in those parts; which being neglected, in some, have come to putrefaction, and *Gangrenes*: And here I must admonish women in childbed, not to regard the words of their nurses, or keepers which continually preach to them, to make much of themselves, saying, that they had need to fill their bellies, which have beene so much emptied, telling them how much blood they have lost, and do daily loose and that at last they will grow so weake, that they will not be able to helpe themselves.

The nurses  
must not be al-  
wayes harkned  
to.

But these are frivolous reasons, for the greatest part of the blood, which a woman voideth then, and all her month, is but superfluous blood, and is  
good

### Lib. 3. the happy delivery of Women.

191

good for nothing : which hath beene kept in the body a long time, even the nine moneths, that she hath gone with childe : it being now necessary for her health to have it voided out of her Matrice : that so her belly which is swolne, and puffed up with the abundance of blood (like a sponge that is full of water) may be quitted & discharged, and returne to the naturall proportion and bignesse. And therefore for their healths sake, they must not feed so plentifully the first daies, as the vulgar thinke : that by this abstinence may hinder the Ague which may happen unto them, and likewise keepe downe the abundance of blood, which would flow to their breasts, and be converted into milke, and by reason of the store thereof grow cloty and curdle, and in the end impostumate.

She must feed sparingly.

Wherefore the five first dayes, let her use Broths, Panades, new Egges, and gelly ; not glutting her selfe (as commonly they doe) either with flesh or Almonds. In the morning let her take a supping or Broth : and so likewise at dinner, with a couple of new laid egges, and some Panade, and againe at supper, let her have the like, closing her stomake with a little gelly : but yet if she meane to nurse her child her selfe, she must feed more plentifully. Let her drinke Barley water, wherein a little Cinamon, and a few Coriander seedes have bin boyled. The great Ladies of Italy doe use a water, made of Capons which is this.

Her meats.

A drinke.

Take two Capons ready pulled and dressed : boyle them in an earthen pot, with a sufficient quantity of faire

Capon-water for Ladies.

faire water, till they bee halfe solden, then take them forth, and cut them into small peeces, to bee used as followeth.

Take of Englossfe, Borage, and Balme of each two good handfats: whereof you must make a lay in a glasse Limbecke, and upon that, another of the said Capons flesh, and so upon that a lay of leafe Gold, with a drachme of the powder of pearle, then poure in some of the bruth, on the top: which you shall doe, untill all bee bestowed in the same manner. This being done, you must distill it, in a double vessel or Balneo Marie, and draw a quart of water or thereabouts, which must be reiterated so often, till you thinke that you have enough to serve the woman in childbed, for tenne or twelve daies: But this curiosity, is for Princesses and great Ladies. The said water must bee drawne sixe weeks or two moneths before it bee used, and set in the sunne in sommer, and over an oven in winter, to take away the rawnesse that remaines in it.

Another drink.

If the woman have not an ague, in my opinion, she may drinke a little white or claret wine, with twice as much boyled water. But there bee some women that cannot endure wine, and therefore let them drink water and hony boyled together, or else boyled water: if they desire to drink in the day time between their meals, or else in the night, give them a little syrop of Maiden haire, with boyled water, or any other syrop, so it be not astringent, because of their purgings. When her paines, the feare of the ague, and the burning of her breasts be past, then may

may she feed more liberally, and then she may eat at dinner a little meat, with her broth: as Capon, Partridge, Pigeon, or a bit of Veale: and at supper beside her broth, a little of Veale, Mutton, Chicken or any other good meat.

The eight day being past, about which time commonly the wombe is well purged, and cleared, it will not be amisse to nourish her better, giving her more solid meat, and in greater quantity, that shee may grow strong againe, the sooner. All the which time she must keep herselfe very quiet, not much moving, or stirring herselfe, nor so much as once looking into the fire, neither speake as little as may be, and have no noise made about her, nor suffer her to be much visited, but by her friends and kinsfolkes, excluding all such tattling Gossips, as may tell her any thing to trouble her or make her sad. Let her sleepe rather in the night, than in the day time: yet, if shee have not rested in the night by reason of some paines, then let her sleepe, when soever it comes upon her. And because most women in that case, are Costive, and cannot void their excrements: therefore it will be very fit to give her some such gentle Clister.

Noise is least full.

Sleepe.

℞. Pul. Mala. Parictur. Bisaul. totius an. m. i. flor. Chameric. Miliot: an. p. i. fow. Anis. fenicli. an. ℥ii. Coquant in decolt. Capiti. vervec. de quo acci-  
pe quart. iiii. in quibus distet. sacchar. rub. Mel. Mero-  
curiah an. ℥ii. Anis. recent. ℥. iiii. fat Clister.

A Clyster.

You may also adde thereto sometimes an ounce

Bb

of

of *Diantholiron*. If she dislike Clysters, let her take a little broth or decoction of Sene.

I am of opinion that the Athenian women, while they were in Child-bed, did take the broth of Cabbage, or Coleworts, rather to be loosebellied, then to drive away witchcraft; as *Athenicus* would have it: For heretofore the Cabbage was *Catoes* Physick and all his house hold. And therefore when the Romans banish the Physicians, *Cato* said: that the Cabbage alone, was Physicke enough to cure all their diseases; and besides he made a little Commentary upon that subject.

The use of  
Coleworts.

Sadness to be  
avoided.

Let her banish all griefe and heavinesse; having regard only of her health, and to be merry, praising God for her delivry.

What must be done to the Womans Breasts, Belly, and  
nether parts, that is newly delivered.

**W**HEN I have set downe the manner of dyet, a Woman in Child-bedde should observe, it will not bee amisse to shew, what is fit to be done unto her, before she sit up or rise, endeavouring herein, to bring all the parts of her Body, which have beene strayned, and as it were quite changed, through a long, and painefull staye, to their former state, that they may be recovered and grow strong with as much speed as may be possibly.



If

*Lib. 3. the happy delivery of Women.* 195

If our French Ladies were (in this point) like unto those which *Resputius Florentinus* doth write of: it would then bee needlesse to prescribe so many medicines, for restoring them to the same state they were in before their being with childe. There are women (saith he) that dwell beyond the Antarctique Pole, whose bodies are entire & Virgin-like, even after often child-bearing, and in whom there is perceived no difference from them that are Virgins, as they that have opened them, having made diligent search, doe testifie: but since there be no such women found in our quarters, (though I dare boldly say there be some not much different) therefore will it be very necessary to have a care what is to be done to their belly, breasts, and nether parts. Wherefore after the sheeps skinn or Hares skin hath staid on foure or five houres, let it bee taken away, and the womans belly and groine anointed with the liniment following. And then applying the Cear-cloth of a just bignesse, which must bee continued the first seven daies, dressing it every morning, and turning the said Cearcloth, sometimes on the one side, and sometimes on the other: the liniment is this.

Women that are Virgins after child-bearing.

*Rx. Ol. Chamæm. Amygd. dul. Hyper. an. ʒi s. Spermac. cati ʒi. Sapi. Hirci. ʒi. Ol. Myrtill. ʒs. Liquefi ut omnia simul, & fiat linimentum, quo ungantur partes ventris calidè quotidie superposita tela sequenti.*

But before you lay on the Cearcloth, you shall apply to her navell, an emplaster of *Galbanum*, of

the hignesse of two or three fingers, in the middlest  
whereof you must put two or three grains of civet,  
and it must bee so applied that the small thereof  
strike not up to the Womans nose: the Cearecloth  
is this.

A Cearecloth;

Rx. Cera alb.  $\zeta$  iii. Pomat. flor. Mastich. Pingued. vi-  
tulan.  $\zeta$  i. spermat. ceti.  $\zeta$  i s. Ol. Hyperic. Amygdal.  
dulc. an.  $\zeta$  i. Terebinth. Venet. lota in aq. Parietar.  
 $\zeta$  s. liquefiant uncta in Balneo Marie. & liquefactis  
responde behem ad magistralu mentis, que refrig-  
gerata polietur vitro plano & applicetur centri post  
infectionem.

Then must the breasts be washed as wee have shewed  
before.

This being done, you must have a care to her  
breasts; Some apply to their breasts onely round  
plasters, made of some such Cearecloth as this.

Another  
Cearecloth;

Rx. Cera nore  $\zeta$  vi. Ol. Rosar. Myrtill. Mellis Kar-  
borens. an.  $\zeta$  iii. liquefiant simul & fiat sparadra-  
pum.

The said round plasters must have a hole in the  
middle for the Nipple to come through. Others use  
this liniment and Cearecloth.

An ointment  
for the breasts;

Rx. Ol. Rosar. Myrtill. an.  $\zeta$  i s. Aceti parum, misce,  
unge mammas calide bis in die. secundo die insperge  
mammas pulvere myrtillorum. & appone hoc spa-  
radrapum.

A Cearecloth;

Rx. Ol. Myrtillor.  $\zeta$  iii. Ol. Amygd. dulc.  $\zeta$  i. Terebinth.  
venet.  $\zeta$  vi. Mastich.  $\zeta$  ii. Nucis Cupras.  $\zeta$  i. Bol.  
Arm. terra sigillat. an.  $\zeta$  iii. sang. Dracon.  $\zeta$  iii.  
Mit.



*Lib. 3. the happy delivery of Women. 197*

*Myrtill: Balsam. aa. ℥ ii. Decor. Florent: Salvia  
an ʒ s. Cera q. s. fiat Sparadrapum.*

Whereof you may make rounds, as I said before.

Some Women take water, partly, or smallage, and boile it a pretty while with Vrine, and apply it to the breasts. I have often tried this ointment following, which hinders the milk from curdling and congealing, the breasts being rubd therewith.

An ointment to keepe the milke from curdling.

*Rx. Vng. Popul. ʒ i s. Refriger. Gal. ʒ s. Ol. Rofar. ʒ vi.  
Aethi parum; liquefiat simul, & fiat Linimentum.*

Some put sage between their breasts, and under their Armpits:

Now concerning the nether parts: let them be bathed gently, the first three or foure daies, with warm milk: wherein hath been boyled a little Chervill, plantaine, and a few Rose leaves.

Fomentations for the parts.

The daies following, untill the eighth day, let her use this bath or fomentation.

*Rx. Pini alb. & aque. an. lb. v. flor. Hyperic. rosar. rub. an. p. i. in aq. mirabilis ʒ ii. fiat decoctio.*

After both these bathings, let there be applied; to the sides of her nether parts, this Ointment; with a very fine linnen cloth:

*Rx. Ol. Hyper. ʒ ii. Sperm. Cat. ʒ i s. Cera alb. parum. liquefiat simul, & fiat ut formam Linimenti, ad usus.*

An ointment

When the first eight daies are past, shee shall weare upon her belly the Gaze cloth following; her belly being first rubd with this Ointment.

Another ointment.

*Rx. Ol. Hyper. Chamem. Aethi. an. ʒ i. Ol. Mustich.*

B. 3

ʒ i s

℞ i℞. ol. Myrtil. ℥. vi. Spermatis. Cati. ℥. ij. Sepi renum Hirci ℥. i℞. Adipis Cerui ℥. j. Cere nova modicum, fiat unguentum: quo unguatur venter puerperae superponendo telam sequentem.

A Cearcloth for the belly.

℞. Ol. Myrtil. Hyperic an. ℥. j. ℞. Ol. Aneth. ℥. j. Terebinth. Venet. in aqua Artemis lot. ℥. ℥. ij. liquefac simul, & auferendo ab igne impone telam ex canabe, quae contineat totum ventrem: & inguina, deferat spatio octo dierum, premissis suis.

The fifteene dayes being past, shee shall weare eight dayes more (by which time three weekes of her lying in will be finished) this Cear-cloth following, over all her belly and groine.

A Cearcloth for the belly.

℞. Ol. Mastich. Myrtil. Infusis. Cydon. an. ℥. j. ℞. Ol. Glandium ℥. ij. Spermatis. Cati ℥. j. Terebinth. Venet. Sapius lota in ay. Plantag. ℥. ℞. Cere ℥. vi. liquefiscat omnia simul, addens puluer. Mastich. Terra sigillata, an. ℥. ℞. Irid. Florent. ℥. j. removendo ab igne, impuatur seta ex canabe quae contineat totum ventrem. deferat quindecim dies integros: which must bee renewed afresh, after the first eight dayes. In which space her neather parts must be bathed with this fomentation.

A strengthening Fomentation for the lower parts.

℞. Ful. Plantag. Tapsi. Barbat. Cestined. Caud. equina an. m. i. foli Cupress. m. j. ℞. Cortic. graeat. Nuc. Cupress. Balauft. an. ℥. ℞. Rosar. rub. flor. Chamem. Melilot. an. p. j. Alu. min. Roch. ℥. ij. Calam. Aromat. Irid. Florent. an. ℥. ii. Caryophil. ℥. i. fiant sacculi duo, coquantur in equis partibus vini austeri, & aquae fabror. pro ore exteriori, calli uteri.

And

And when three weekes of her time are expired, she having beene, neither troubled with Ague, paines, or gripings, nor any other accident extraordinary, and being likewise wel cleansed from all her after-purgings, before she goe abroad, it will bee very good for her to bath, cleanse, and wash her selfe being first gently purg'd, with some easie medicine, according to the Physicians direction.

*Baths to be made in Sommer, and while the weather is hot.*

**B**ecause the seasons of the yeare are divers, therefore will it bee the best course to use Baths of divers compositions: As if the woman bee brought a bed in Sommer, and hot weather, then shee must have provided for her such a bath as followeth.

Take a great tub, or hog shead, and fill it full of river water, made somewhat hot, adding thereto as much white Wine as you thinke fit: wherein you shall steepe the space of a day and a night, of *Pen- nill, Marigold, Mugwort, Motherwort, Penny-roy- all, Agrimonie, Chamemill, and Melilot flowers, of Rose leaves,* of each two handfuls; put them in o a strong linnen bag, that is large enough, quench- ing oftentimes in the said liquor, a barre of Iron red hot: Then over night, you shall take out three or foure pottles full of the said water, and set them over the fire to seeth, and then poure it into the tub againe; and cover it close, that it may keepe in the heat

First Bath for Summer.

The manner of making.

distillace  
of the

heat all night, and warme the tub: then in the morning you must put in more hot water, untill you have made the bath temperate, which must be neither too hot, nor too cold. In the morning, when the bath is thus prepared, the woman shall goe into it, sitting upon the bag of herbes aforesaid, and stay there an houre, or two, without forcing herselfe, and a little before her coming forth, let her take this Electuarie.

How long she  
must stay in the  
Bath.

An Electuarie.

R. Conf. Englas. Rosar. an. ℥ss. cortha. Citon. condit.  
3ij fiat Conditor, sicut in dicto est.

Some women cannot away with this Electuarie, but content themselves, with a little Citon pill candied.

Shee may also sweat a little in her bed, and then cause herselfe to be gently rub'd with linnen cloths, to take away any spess or fraines that have hapned upon her skin, in the time of her childbed. Her sweat being past, and she somewhat cool'd herselfe in her bed: then she must not eat any meat, but such as is easie of digestion, and that breeds good blood.

Now, this first Bath doth but only serve to prepare her for a Second, which shall be made as followeth:

Take river water, and quench in it hot Iron, as you did in the former baths: wherein you shall boile two great bagges, which shall containe these Ingredients,

Second Bath  
for Summer.

R. Farin. Groh. Faber. Lupinat. an. lb. ss. Farin.  
glandium lb. s. Rosar. rub. sss. Clovesmel. Me-  
lilot.

*Melilot. an. pug. iij. Alumin. glacial. Roch. crud. an. ℥ iij. cortic. Querc. Nucum Cupress. an. ℥ ij. Balanst. ℥ j. Caryophil. Nu. is Mosch. an. ℥ vj. Granor. Tinctior. ℥ ij s. conquassantur omnia simul; & fiant sacculi cum pauco lineo : bulliant in aqua Balnei primi ut dictum est, & fit Balneum secundum.*

The second Bath must be made as the first, without being either too hot, or too cold : Wherein shee shall stay an hour or two, sitting upon the bags ; and before her going forth let her take the former Electuary, or a peece of Citron pill conditioned : This Bath will serve for twice, it being onely new heated againe.

In Winter time you shall make these Baths.

*Rc Majoran. Artemis Menth. Rorismar. Heder. terrest. an. M. iij. farina. Hord. fabar. Avenac. Orobi. Lupinor. an. lb. ij. flor. Rorismar. Chamemel. Melilot. Lova. dul. an. M. s. Rosar. rub. m. ij. Caryophil. Nucis Mosch. Cinamen Benzoin. Stryach. calam. an. ℥ i. Alunui. lb. s. granor. tinctior. Balanst. an. ℥ iij. omnia conquassentur, & fiant sacculi duo. Coquantur in aqua Calibestha, in qua sepe extinctum sit ferrum candens, & fiat Balneum ut precedens.*

Bath for Winter.

In Winter the woman in Child-bed shall use this in stead of the former, having washed her selfe in this first Bath, that was prescribed for Summer, and

Cc

taking



tinue limber and wrinkled; but likewise the belly and breasts, doe also remaine, almost as big as they were before shee was delivered; it will therefore not be amisse to take some order, that this exceeding greatnesse of her belly and breasts may be diminished, and they hardened withall: endeavouring by all meanes to bring them againe to their naturall constitution.

Means to harden the breasts.

And since that this swelling and puffing up proceeds commonly from some humors or wind that is got in, and gathered together in those parts, having bene too much relaxed: therefore it will be very necessary before you apply any outward thing thereto, that shee be purged, keeping a good diet, and avoiding all meats that shall breed any ill humours or winditresse.

Which being done, you may apply this that followeth.

Rx. Farin. fabar. Hord. lupinar. an. ℥ij. farin. Oryz. Glandium an. ℥. ij. s. Coquantur perfecte in aquis partibus. Aq. Myrtillor. Cauda equin. Centinod. Plantag. & Rosar. addendo.

Pul. Nuc. Capres. Balanst. Myrtill. an. ℥ s. Pul. flor. Camemel. melilot. sem. fenicul. an. ℥ s. Sang. dracon. Alumin. an. ℥ ij. Ol. Myrtillor. ung. Rosat. Mes. an. ℥ iij. Mellis ℥ i s. fiat Cataplasma ad formam pulvis satis liquide, post coctionem poteris addere Albumina ovor. Venti applicentur & mammis.

A Pultesse for the belly and breasts.

This Cataplasme must lie on xxiiij. houres, and then be renewed. In stead of a second Cataplasme,

plafate, you may use this water.

*Rc. Prunor. Sylvest. Mespilor. Cor. nor. Nuc. Cupress.  
Balauft. Glandinum cum suis Cupulis, & si deijnt  
fructus, sume cortices arborum, an. lb. s. flor. Ro-  
sar. s. l. est. Rubrar. an. ℥ iij. Albumin. duor. ovor.  
Aluminis Crud. ℥ ij. Cariophil. Nucis Mosch. an. ℥ s.  
Benzoin. Syrac. Galamit. an. ℥ i. Calam. Arom. Frid.  
flor. an. ℥ vi. Macerentur omnia in lb. xij. aqua sa-  
burosum: post infusionem 4. dierum, p. nantur om-  
nia in Alembicum plumbeum, & fiat distillatio:  
servetur ad usum.*

A water for the  
breasts, &c.

In this water you shall dip & soake linnen cloths  
or sponges, and apply them warme, either upon the  
belly, breasts, or any other part which you would  
have confirmed, knit, and drawne together: And  
to make it the more astringent, you must steepe  
therein for every quart of liquor, of Massicke, San-  
guis Draonis, and Bole Armoniacke powdered, of  
each halfe an ounce; setting it in the Sun in Sum-  
mer, and over an Oven in the Winter.

But it is enough onely (especially in great La-  
dies) to make the foresaid parts firme and hard, and  
keepe them from hanging and flagging downe:  
But it is also very fitting, and likewise much requi-  
red by them, to have their skin made faire, smooth,  
and delicate: for which purpose this water is sin-  
gular good.

A water to  
beautifie and  
adorne the  
skiane, &c.

*Rc. Aq. Florum, Bisinal. Maluc. an. lb. ij. Aq. Rosar.  
alb. lb. iij. Limones duos, (remota cute. exteriori)  
minutim incisos, Prunor. Sylvest. immatur. lib. i.  
distentur. Carum unius Caponis p. ueris, abieciat  
ossibus*



*osibus & intestinis minutim incisam. Lact. Caprin. lb. s. Amygdal. dulc. mund. ℥ij. farina Orob. Lupinor. an. ℥s. Limaces rubros no. vj. Infunde omnia simul per duos dies, deinde distillantur in Balneo Mariæ.*

With this water the aforesaid parts must be washed, having first cleansed them with common water, wherein there hath bin some crums of bread steeped all night.

Another approved water.

*℞. Aq. Lilior. ddb. Nymph. an. lb. iij. Lactis Caprin. lb. s. Casei recenter facti sine sale lb. i. Limones exteriori cute remota, incisas numero iij. Albu-mina ovor. numero viij. Borax ℥ij. Saphura ℥j. Talci subtiliter pul. ℥i. Cerus ℥s. Columbor. juven. num. ij. Ol. Tartari ℥i s. misceantur, & omnia distillentur in Balneo Mariæ.*

Another water.

Myrrhe (as Maister Le Bon writes, who tells it for a great secret) doth lessen and straighten the naturall parts, when they have beene over stretched, without hurting the Matrice, as also taketh away the wrinkles which happen either in the breasts or belly, and doth confirme and knit those parts, offending neither the pectorall nor naturall parts.

The vertue of Myrrhe.

Sometimes there comes little spots and freckles in the said parts, but oftner in the face, for the taking away whereof this is an excellent Medicaine.

*℞. Tartar. vini albi calcinat. ℥s. Mastich. ℥i s. Saphura ℥i. incorporantur omnia simul cum ovibus albumine. tange maculam, & terge parva linea in eodem imbibe.*

An Ointment for spots.

## CHAP. III.

*Of the accidents which happen to women newly delivered. And first of their After-throwes.*



WE have hitherto treated of the ordering of a woman in Child-bed, as also of the time when shee shall bee ready to walke abroad, and bee Churched. But because there doe befall them many accidents in the time of their lying in, I thought good to write thereof briefly, and to shew the meanes whereby they may bee helped and cured.

And since that the chiefest symptome that happens unto them, and which comes soonest, is the after-throwes: therefore I am determined to speake of them first.

As soone as a Woman is delivered of her childe and after-birth, for the most part she is taken with paines of her belly, which oftentimes are so great and violent, that shee thinks her very belly would bee rent, and cut asunder in divers places, from whence the French word that signifieth these paines and torments was derived.

Franches.

The first cause.

The cause of these gripings or paines may bee threefold: First, either because the Matrice & those parts thereabouts have bin long troubled through the delivery, by striving to bee unburthened and freed

freed of the childe: or else because the blood that runs and gathers is selte to the wombe, (being retained) grows thicke and slimie, that it cannot easily flow, and so makes a distension of the Matrice, it being not able to come away but in great clots, and hard matter, like unto a false conception: and likewise when it is altogether retained and stoppt, it causes a great extension of the wombe.

The second.

Again, it is oftentimes so cleare, thintie, and sharpe, that it flowes above measure, and through the acrimonie and biting thereof, doth gripe and torment as it passeth along: The third cause may proceed from the outward aife, which is entred and got into the wombe, at the coming forth of the childe and the after birth.

The third.

*Hippocrates* hath observed, that women in this evacuation, are troubled with gripings & paines of their first childe more than of any after: the reason is, because their veines are not accustomed to disburthen themselves in this sort. Experience nevertheless teacheth us the contrary; for a woman commonly of her first childe hath very few of these paines and gripings, and the more children shee hath, the more shee is troubled with them. The reason whereof seemes to bee this; because the blood, which in youth is sweet and milde, in process of time gets a bitter, salt, and aduft quality, which passing thorow the veines, procureth this paine: For we finde by experience, that the flesh of beasts or fowle when they are old, grows unpleasant, as being hard, and harsh to the taste.

Sentence of Hippocrates.

Bus.

But whatever the cause of these paines be, wee must seeke to asswage them, and to free the woman from them as well as wee can. If then these paines be small, and that the after-purgings come moderately, wee may leave the worke wholly to nature: onely giving the woman in child-bed the drinke we prescribed before: Of oyle of sweet Almonds, or of Walnuts, which of late hath bene found by experience to be better than the oyle of Almonds, so that the Nuts bee sound and white, not rancide, and the oyle drawne without fire.

Fomentation.

This Oyle is much commended for the gripings which come by the acrimonie and sharpnesse of the blood: and in this case also some easie Fomentations of warme Milke, or fit upon the belly and lower parts: Fomentations also with *Mallows*, *March Mallows*, *Parietary Nigwort*, *Chanowile*, *Melilot*, and *Linseed* boyled in Milke, are very profitable.

When these paines and pangs proceed of thicke slimie blood, which cannot easily flow: or of windy matter, which being shut up, cannot be discuffed, if the paine continue, beside those aforesaid, you may use these remedies following.

A drinke easie to be taken.

A Drinke.

Rx. *Rad. Petrosel.* ʒ ℥. *radic. consolid. Major.* ʒ iiij.  
*sem. Anis. & Fenicul. an.* ʒ ℥. *Bull. omnia simul.*  
*in decocto vituli, vel capris, q. s. in quo dissolue,*  
*croc. gr. iiij. capiat mane tepide.*

Or else she may use this powder, of which good prooffe hath bene made:

R<sup>x</sup> Nucker.

℞. Nucleor. Dactyl. Amygdal. Nucleor. Persicor. A powder for Gripings.  
 an. ʒ ʒ. Cinamom. elect. ʒ i. sem. Anis. ʒ ʒ. Nuc.  
 Mosch. ʒ ij. spec. Diamarg. calid. ʒ j. fiat omnium  
 pulvis, capiatur ʒ j. cum vino, vel cum aq. Cardui  
 Benedict. vel Brodio pulli & vituli, si sit suspicio  
 febris.

℞. Rad. Symph. major. Amygdal. dulc. Nucleor. Per- Another.  
 sicor. an. ʒ j. Mandibul. Lucii piscis, Carab. an.  
 ʒ ʒ. Cinamom. Nuc. Mosch. an. ʒ ij. Ambra Chrys.  
 gr. ʒ ij. folia anri, Nu. vi. fiat omnium pulvis, ca-  
 piatur ʒ i. cum ovo sorbiti, vel vino Hippocratico,  
 vel jusculo pulli.

Some in this case take halfe a spoonfull of Ci-  
 namon water with the yelke of an egge: others  
 with the said yelke of an egge, take two graines of  
 Amber-greese.

If the paines continue, use the Cataplasme fol-  
 lowing.

℞. Vitellos ovor. an. scii. Pul. sem. Anis. Fenicul. A Pulver.  
 an. ʒ ii. Farin. sem. Lini ʒ ii. Pul. flor. Chama-  
 mel. Melilot. an. ʒ j. ʒ. Calamint. ʒ i. ol. Aneth.  
 q. sa. fiat Cataplasma, applicetur ventri calide,  
 auferatur antequam refrigeretur, & iteretur sepius.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of the falling downe of the Fundament  
and Matrice.*

**H**ere are some Women which are delivered with so much difficulty, and are so long in travaile, that to free themselves from this misery & anguish, they are constrained to straine and force themselves in such sort, that the Fundament, or the end of the great gut commeth forth: for a Woman in her delivery must straine and force her selfe, even as one doth at the stoole: It may happen also that the Matrice may follow the childe and after-birth; which is the precipitation or comming downe of the wombe; the ligaments being loosened, and sometimes broken, either through much striving, or because that the Midwife or Chirurgion in drawing forth the childe or after-birth, draw the Matrice together with it, which may be done, and yet not they in fault.

When the Fundament commeth forth, it is to be put up after this manner: First, the Chirurgion must put up the gut with a fine linnen cloth warme, as gently as possibly he can: but if he finde any difficulty herein, because of some humour which is come to it, by abiding in the Aire all the time of the travaile; or by any flux of humours which the paine hath caused: then must he bathe and foment it,

The cure of the  
Fundament  
fallen.

it with a little milke, wherein red Roses, white Mullen, Camomile, and Melilot hath bin boiled : and when he shall see that the swelling is gone, and it is come to it selfe, then by little and little he shall put it up, not using any force or violence at all. He may also (if the paine be asswaged) foment it with <sup>Foment,</sup> red Wine, in which Plantaine, white Mullen, red Roses, and Balaufts have beene boyled, and then presently he shall gently put it up. The Matrice also being fallen downe, shall be put up after the same manner : but we will speake more at large of this; and of the causes thereof, in another place.

CHAP. V.

*Of the hurts and excoriations which happen in the lower parts by Child-bearing.*



Although neither the Midwife in the naturall birth use any violence in bringing the childe into the world : nor the Chirurgion either in turning or drawing forth the childe, handle or touch the woman, but with all gentlenesse and tendernesse that may be ; yet oftentimes doe some contusions, or other hurts happen in the lower parts of the woman, yea, and excoriations, together with chaps and clifts, about the part called *Perineum* : in respect that so great a morfell hath passed thorow so narrow a place : Besides that, some women are very streight and close, either

being very young or very old : or because they have used medicines, to make those parts strait and narrow ; besides that, in some women the childe proves very bigge.

For all these accidents it is good to use at first, (as we have said before) Oile of S<sup>t</sup> Johns wort, and Oile of Roses, beaten with whole egges altogether. If the sides of those parts be bruised, you may use this Fomentation, which will resolve it gently.

A Fomentation  
for the contu-  
sion of the lower  
parts.

Rx. *Malva Bismala. an. m. i. Matricar. m. s. Rosar. rub. flor. Chamem. Melilot. an. m. i. fiant sacculi duo parvi, coquantur in aquis partibus vini & aque fontis, & admoveatur parti.*

This Fomentation must be applied onely to the entrance and Orifice of the Matrice, lest the ordinary courses be hindered : and the aforesaid Medicine of Oile of S<sup>t</sup> Johns wort, shall be prepared without the whites of Egges, and applied upon fine Lint or Cotton, leaving the passage of the wombe open : both to give way to the purgings, and vent to such vapours as may proceed out of the Matrice.

For the excoriations and chaps, you may use this Ointment.

Rx. *Cera alb. ℥ s. Ol. Amygd. dulc. ℥ i. s. liquefiant simul, & fiat Linimentum.*

Although these kinde of ulcers are easily healed, as being but small (as Hippocrates noteth) notwithstanding, they must be carefully handled, being in a part of delicate and exquisite sense, and full of Nerves.

De Morb. Mul-  
Her. lib. 1.



Of the Medicine last described; you shall make small plaisters, and apply them fitly upon the exco-riations and chaps: And because (as I have noted) there often happens a rent or breach about the *Perineum*; neare to the Fundament, and that when the woman makes water, shee feels there a great pricking and paine; it is necessary that her Nurse or keeper apply to that part two or three little linnen clouts; spread with the aforesaid Ointment, to keepe the urine from touching and galling there. But if the breach or clift be great; you shall apply there little boulders of Lint dypt and dressed with this Balme.

Rc. *Ol. Hyperic. ʒ s. Axung. porc. recent. ʒ ij. Olei vitellis avor. ʒ iij. Terbinth. venet. ʒ ij. fiat Balsamum ad usum.* A Balme for the lower parts

After that you have applied this Balme, you shall lay upon it the plaister before described, of wax, and oyle of Sweet Almonds.

Sometimes it happens that the whole *Perineum* is divided and rifted, even unto the Fundament, and that both the passages are brought into one: which accident I have seene, and for want of helpe, the sides of the wound being hardned with a soarre, both the passages have continued as one. For remedy whereof, I being once called, and finding the woman to bee with childe, I gave her counsell to stay till shee were brought to bed: and about six weekes after shee was delivered; being sent for to cure her, I proceeded in this manner.

First, with a crooked R. as for very sharpe, I cut away

away the scarre and skinne which was growne on both sides, as the common practise is, for an hare lip, which I have showne in my works of Chirurgery: which worke I began from the naturall parts, and so went on to the Fundament, nor taking away much flesh, but onely the skinne, which being taken off, and as it were flead away, I suffered the part to bleed well, both to shunne an inflammation, and also to make the stiches with my needle more conveniently. About the mid'st of the clift or division, I passed my needle thorow both sides thereof, (having first laid them even, as well above and below, as in the middle) and I took good hold of the flesh on both sides, there leaving my needle, about which I did turne & winde the threed on both sides, as useth to be done in the cure of the hare-lip: then at both ends of the clift I gave a stich, somewhat close, such as is commonly made in simple wounds, and upon it I laid a little clout dip't in a balm, which I have here described, and upon that a Plaister of *Discaltheos*.

A Balme for  
fresh wounds,

Re. Gum. Elemi. ℥ ii. Terebinth. venet. ℥ ii. s. Sang.  
Dracac. Myrrh. Aloes an. ℥ i. liquefiant omnia simul,  
& fiat Balsamum. Coletur calide per linteum, &  
servetur usui.

This is an excellent Balme for fresh wounds.

This clift or breach was well healed within fifteene dayes in which time I gave her two Clifters, beside that which she tooke first to prepare her body. But afterwards this woman proving with childe againe, and being in travaile, there hapned a  
fresh

fresh breach neare to the old scarre, but not so long as the other; by reason of the helpe and care of the Midwife, whom I had instructed to anoint and rub the *Perineum* with this liniment.

℞. *Assung. gallin. & Cunicul. an. ℥i s. Assung. Por-* An Ointment,  
*rec. ℥i. Ol. Amygdal. dul. ʒvj. liquefiant simul &*  
*fiat litus, abluatur diu, in aq. Parietariae.*

CHAP. VI.

Of the Hemorrhoides.



When the Orifices of the veines neare the Fundament doe swell and rise, either more and lesse, according to the quantity of the humours which doe fill them, the Greeks call this disease the *Hemorrhoides*. Of these there are two sorts, the one inward and hidden within the Fundament, the other outward and apparant. The cause hereof is store of humours, which commonly are grosse and Melancholicke, sometimes Flegmaticke or Cholericke, which filling the said veines afterward flow downe to the ends of them; which humours not finding way to issue out, doe extend the veines in such sort, that sometimes they become as bigge as Pigeons, nay, sometimes Pullers eggs.

Many women as soone as they are delivered, are troubled with them, by reason of the great paine which they have suffered. There may be two reasons given hereof, the one the great striving and straining

Why women are subject to the Hemorrhoides.

straining to bring the childe into the world, which maketh the blood come into the said veines, and dilateth them; the other retention of their naturall courses which being stayed, the blood and humors which should have come forth, change their course, and being derived into the veines of the Fundament, procure the Hemorrhoides.

The differences  
of Hemor-  
rhoides.

The Hemorrhoides doe differ according to the nature of the humour of which they are bred, for if they proceed of a flegmaticke and waterish blood, because of their colour, and the likenesse that they have to a bladder full of water, they are called *Vesicales*; or *uvales*: and these are white, soft, and not painfull; if they breed of a grosse and thicke flegme, then they are called *Verrucales*, and *ficales*: and these are hard and painfull, especially if there be any hot humor mixed with the matter of them, which may be known by their rednes. If they proceed of blood and choler, together with some part of Melancholy, being uneven and rough like a Mulbery, then they be called *Morales*, these are very sensible and painfull; and in colour neare to a deepe darke red.

*Vesicales* or  
*uvales*.

*Verrucales*.

*Morales*.

Women are subject to all these kinds of Hemorrhoides, but especially after they be delivered: But my purpose is not to write so generally of all these kinds, but onely of those which are swolne, big, and painfull, which chiefly happen to women in child-bed, and bleed very little, or not at all.

The cure consists in three things, that is, in diet, in diverting of the humor which flows to the part, and in evacuating that humour which is contained

in

in it : which being done, the paine will bee easily appeased.

For the diet, it shall bee such as we have already Diet. prescribed for women in child-bed : the humour shall be diverted by letting blood, first in the arme, and then in the foot, in the veine *Saphena*, and lastly, by applying of Cupping-glasses to the side of the thighs, and that for two purposes : the one to bring downe the purgings, which being staid, may be thought to be some cause of the Hemorrhoides, the other to diminish the quantity of blood in the crurall veine, which being emptied, will draw to it some part of that blood which flows to (and it may be some of that which is contained in) the Hemorrhoides veines. As for the third point, which is, to evacuate that blood which is now settled in the Hemorrhoides veines, that may bee done by Medicines which have power to resolve and digest, and also to assuage paine, of which kind is this following, which I have used with good successe, and *Vigo* before me.

*Rx Fol. Mal. Bismal. Violar. Parietar. Tappi Barbat. cum rad. an. M. ij. Sem. Cydon. ʒ vi. bord. mund. m. i. s. furfur. M. ii. sem. lin. sænegræc. integ. an. ʒ ii. Pomor. dulc. aliquantulum confractor. num. xii. lingue passerine. vtrg. pastor. an. m. i. fiat omnium decoctio, in aqu. sufficiente, addendo flor. Chamemel. Melilot. Aneth. an. M. i. s. Bulliant usque ad consumptionem tertiae partis.*

A Decoction wherewith to foment and suffumigate.

After that she hath received the fume of this decoction, or otherwise bathed the fundament here-

E e

with

with a pretty white, let this Liniment bee applied.

A Liniment.

℞. Butyr. recent. ℥ x. Ol. de vitellis ovor. ℥ s. Pin-  
qued. Anat. ℥ iij. Succ. Plantag. Tapf. Barbat. an.  
℥ ij. misce agitando omnia spacio xij. horarum in  
mortario plumbeo.

The chiefe Medicine which is commonly appli-  
ed, is this.

Another.

℞. Kog. popul. ℥ i. vitellum unius ovi. Ol. Sem. Lini.  
℥ s. ung. refriger. Gal. ℥ vi. misce omnia simul, &  
fiat litus.

An experiment  
of the Authors.

If the paine bee great, you may adde hereto a  
scruple of Opium. I have made often prooffe of this  
Medicine, to take all the white of a few Leeks, and  
cut them small; and then boyle them with milke  
till they come to the forme of a Pultesse, and then  
lay it hot to the Hemorrhoides.

Rhasis Medicine

Iohn de Vigo alloweth of the authority of Rhasis;  
who counselleth to take a white Onion, and to fill  
it with Butter, then to bake it in an Oven, or in the  
embers, and so beat it, and apply it like a plaister,  
which I have divers times made triall of. This plai-  
ster also is much commended:

A Pultesse.

℞ Rad. Lilior. albor. ℥ i s. rad. Ireos nost. ℥ s. Scrophu-  
lar. taps. Barbat. flor. Chamamel. Melilot. Hype-  
ric. an. p. i. Dactyl. num. vj. Limac. rubror. num.  
x. fiat decoctio. pistentur. passentur passatura. adde  
farin. Sem. Lini. ℥ s. Butyr. recent. ℥ j. Myrrh.  
Thuris an. ℥ i. Croci ℥ s. vitellos ovor. num ij.  
fiat Cataplasma.

An approved  
remedy.

I have had good experience also of this Medicine.  
Take twelve red snailles without their shels, of Mille-  
pedes

*pedes*, or *Wood-lice* 20. or 30. infuse & parboile them a little in Linseed oyle, and make a Liniment hereof, and with it anoint the Hemorrhoides.

Take of the aforesaid *Wood-lice*; thirty, *Chervil* a little handfull, boyle them in milke, or oyle of *Violets*; then beat them together, and make thereof a kinde of Plaister, at the last use this fomentation.

Another casie to be made.

Boyle white *Mullen*, *Scrophularia*, and *Chervil* together: Take a pint of this decoction, halfe a pint of red Wine, Common Salt, and white *Frankinsence*; of each halfe an ounce, boyle them all together againe, till there be but two third parts, or thereabouts left, and so use this decoction to the Hemorrhoides, fomenting them with little soft Sponges.

A Fomentation

Whilist these Medicines are used, the belly must be kept loose either with *Cassia* or *Manna*, or else with Clysters (if the pipe will enter in easily) that so the excrements may come forth the more readily, and may not burthen or molest the part with their hardnesse and weight.

The belly must be loose.

It will be very convenient also to let her take of the powder of white *Mullen* in a little milke, or else in Lozenges made with Sugar, because of the conceit some have, that this herbe so taken, takes away the Hemorrhoides. Some prepare Pils of *Bdellium*, *Galbanum*, and the powder of white *Mullen*; and hereof give the weight of a French Crowne. If the Hemorrhoides heale not for all these meanes, I would give counsell to open them with a Lancette, thinking it better so lance and open them, so to let out the bloud, then to apply Leeches unto them, because

cause they sucke, and bring downe as much blood to the part as they empty and draw forth.

And because these Hemorrhoides have oftentimes a great hardnesse with them, this Plaister or Pulteffe may be fitly applied.

A Pulteffe.

Rx Rad. Bisul. Liliar. an.  $\zeta$ . i. s. fol. Porri cum But. an.  $\text{ss}$ . i. flor. Chamemel. Melilot. an.  $\text{m}$ . s. Coquantur omnia in lacte, pistent. passatur & adde Bdellii cum axungis Anser.  $\mathcal{E}$  Galim. Hiquisoldi an.  $\zeta$ . i. fiat Cataplasma.

Another.

Take Bdellium melted, dissolve it with Goose grease, Duck grease, and oyle of Peach Kernel.

Oftentimes the Hemorrhoides by reason of their hardnesse, cleave, and so come to ulcers and chaps.

#### CHAP. VII.

Of the after-purgings, which come downe too abundantly in Women newly delivered.



It happens to Women newly delivered, that their after purgings sometimes come downe too immoderately, other times that they are suddenly staid. These two accidents are very troublesome, and breed many inconveniences. Hippocrates writes, that both these bring many symptoms with them, which Galen also witnesseth, saying, If the purgings flow in too great abundance; and above custome, it brings women

De Morb. Mul.  
Comment. in lib. 5  
Aphorism.



women into divers diseases, as Cold, Distemper, Dropsie, and Convulsions : and if the same be stay- ed and doe not flow at all, then some inconvenience happens to the Matrice, as inflammation, *Erysipelas*, *Scyrrhus*, and at last Cankers. So that we may easily see how fit and necessary it is, that these purgings or courses should come away moderately, and in an indifferent quantity. This the Chirurgeon should know by observing the time and the quantity which is limited for them, set downe in divers places by the ancient writers : And first, for the continuance of time that these purgings should flow ; *Hippocrates* doth proportion the time in which a woman in child-bed should be purged, according to the time wherein the childe is shaped or formed : which is thirty dayes for a man-child, and forty two at most for a woman-childe.

How long the purgings should flow. *Hip. de natura pueri.*

This time may bee also measured according to that ordinary time of purging that is omitted in the nine moneths she goes with child, as the blood should be purged in every one of these nine months, as in every one of them the space of three or foure daies (which put together, amount to twenty seven, or thirty six dayes) so in recompence hereof when a woman is delivered, shee must bee purged twenty seven, or thirty six dayes.

It is written in *Leuiticks*, that when a woman hath brought forth a man-childe, shee shall continue in the blood of her purifying three and thirty dayes, but if she beare a maid-childe, then she shall continue in the blood of her purifying sixty six dayes.

*Leuit. chap. 12. 2.*

*Lib. de Morbis  
Mulier.*

As for the quantity and proportion of these purgings *Hippocrates* is of opinion, that the purgings which a woman should have every moneth, should bee a pint and a halfe, or thereabouts. And in his Booke *De natura Pueri*; hee would have a Woman in child-bed at the beginning should purge about thirteene or fourteene ounces, or a pint, and so the whole space of thirty dayes for a man-childe; and forty two dayes for a maiden-childe, every day diminishing the quantity till it wholly leave her.

Signes to know  
whether a Wo-  
man in child-  
bed be in health  
or no.

As for the quality of these purgings, if the blood be red, as in a beast new killed, and doe presently congeale and thicken, then it is a signe that shee is in good health, and will continue so all the time of her lying in. But when these purgings come in little quantity, and of an ill colour, and doe not congeale suddenly, it is a signe that the Woman is not well, nor will not finde her selfe so all her moneth, as the foresaid Authour well observeth.

*Comment. in 6.  
Epidemior.*

*De morb. Mulier.*

But it is not to bee expected that all Women should have their purgings in like quantity, for we must respect the habitude of the body, the course of life, the temperament, & other particular things, which in divers women are divers. Therefore *Galen* saith, that these purgings continue long in women that have thinne and subtill blood; *Hippocrates* saith, that women that are of full bodies, are purged more exactly; and againe hee writes, that women that are more in yeares, commonly have more of this evacuation than they that are younger.

There may be two causes assigned of this abundant

dant evacuation, the one outward, as some fall, blow, or painfull travaile, which a woman may suffer, either in bringing forth her childe, or the after-birth : It may also arise from passions of the minde, or from the unseasonable use of Baths; or from some other ill government in her childe-bed.

The inward causes may bee two : either the strength and vigor of the mother, which expelleth and putteth forth so much blood, as is troublesome, and burdensome unto her ; and in this kinde there is no great danger, because shee that is so strong, to expell in this sort, will be also able to retaine, so much as will be convenient and necessary for her. Or else contrariwise, this may proceed from the weaknesse, and faintnesse of the woman, who is not able to retaine and keepe that blood which nature hath provided for her : and this hapneth chiefly when the Orifices of the veines continue open, after the delivery, not being able, (as Hippocrates saith) to shut, and gather themselves together.

Inward causes.

The other cause is referred to the blood; which offends either in quantity or quality, or both : In respect of the quantity, those women have store of these after-purgings, which are full of blood ; because the Liver breeds more blood, then is necessary ; which afterwards is voided by the Matrice.

The quality of the blood is cause hereof, when it is too sharpe, piercing, thin, watry, putride, or venomous, so that nature desires to be rid of it.

As

The Cure.

As for the Cure, you must fit that according to the cause, and yet there be some generall remedies which may serve for all immoderate evacuations; and of this kind is Diet, which must be cooling and moderately drying. Let her feed upon good meats, not salt, nor spiced, nor of strong taste; rather roast than boiled: and of boiled meats, let her chuse to eat of the heads & feet. She may use French Barley, new laid Egges, and Gellies made with astringent herbs. If she take any Broths, let them be prepared with Borage, Buglosse, Lettuce, Purslaine, Barley, and the cold seeds: Let her shun anger, melancholy, grieve, and other such passions of the minde: Let her keepe her selfe quiet, not much stirring or troubling her body. Let her drinke Barley water, or water wherein Steele hath bin quenched. You may give her also (if she have not an Ague) a little Wine, allayed with the said water.

Diet.

Divers remedies.

Let her make her abode in a temperate place, not too hot: Let her lie upon a Mattresse, or straw bed, and not upon a feather-bed.

It will be good to binde her armes hard toward the shoulders, but not the thighs, although *Avicenna* prescribe it. Cupping glasses applied under the paps, and upon the region of the Liver, will be very fit, as *Hippocrates* teacheth: and likewise upon the arme-pits and shoulders, as *Avicenna* counsaileth.

An experiment scene by the Authour.

The most singular and presentest remedy, is to let bloud in the arme, which I have seene tried by the most learned Physitians of our age, with very good successe: For there is no meanes that makes better  
 revulsion,

revulsion, and drawes the blood sooner from the place to which it floweth, than opening of a veine. You shall apply upon the reins, the Os sacrum, and the parts thereabouts, a cloth dipt in Vinegar and water, and likewise betweene the legs; but first use this Cataplasme.

Rx *Bol. Armen. sang. Dracon. an. ʒ j. Gummi Tra-* A Cataplasme.  
*gacanth. ʒ ʒ. pul. Myrtih. Rosar. an. ʒ. vi. succ.*  
*Plantag. Taps. Barbat. vertic. mort. an. q. s. ad*  
*formandum Cataplasma; adde yagucet. Comitiss.*  
*ʒ j. ʒ.*

*Unguentum Comitisse* of it selfe is very good, as likewise this Ointment following, which is approved.

Rx *Succor. Lactuc. Plantag. an. ʒ j. ʒ. Gum. Tra-* An Ointment.  
*gacanth. in aq. Rosar. Macerat. ʒiij. Muccagin.*  
*sem. Cydonior. extract. in aq. Sulan. ʒ ʒ. Ol. Rosar.*  
*Myrtill. an. ʒ j. ʒ. Corall. utriusque Sumach. an.*  
*ʒ j. Far. Hordei ʒ ʒ. Cera parum, fiat ung. adde*  
*Aceti tantillum.*

You shall give her to drinke, a dramme of Trochisques of *Spodium*, with Plantaine water, or a decoction made with *Horse-tail*, *Roses*, *Knotgrasse*, and *Balanstia*. *Hollerius* gives this, as a singular Medicine.

Rx *Scorie ferri cremate, & in aq. Plantag. sapius* *Hollerius hinc*  
*extincte, Pul. lapid. ematitid. triti, an. ʒ j.* *Medicine*  
*Terra sigillat. ʒ ʒ. scrup. Myrtillor. Rosar. seccar.*  
*an. ʒ ʒ. aq. Plantag. ʒiij. fiat potus.*

Rx *Sang. Dracon. Corall. rub. usq. Terr. sigillat. an.* *Another.*  
*ʒ i. semin. Rosar. rub. ʒ ʒ. Spodii Arab. Citrii.*  
*an.*

F F

*Amig. xij. ℥. Myrtillor. vel Plantag. ℥ iij. fiat potus.*

Galen.

Some in this case give three or foure ounces of the iuyce of Plantaine. *Galen* affirmeth, that hee hath staied the immoderate flowing of the monthly sicknesse, with the aforesaid iuyce of Plantaine, when nothing else would doe good.

*Ludovicus Mercatus* commendeth these two Medicines above all other.

Mercatus his Medicines.

*℞. Far. Herd. Oryz. ℥ Anil. an. q. s. ad formandum panem ponderis ℥ vi. recent. coct. projice in libr. viij. ℥. Chalybeate, quibus adde Rosar. rub. sicc. p. ℥. succi Plantag. lb. j. Rad. consolid. Major. ℥ ij. Caudæ equin. m. j. Carnis Prunor. Sylvest. Cidonior. an. ℥ ij. Portulac. m. ij. Bol. Armen. ℥ j. Balsam. santal. omniuin an. ℥ ℞. fiat omnium distillatio de qua cape mone ℥ ij. addenda Syrup. Portulac. aut Rosar. siccar. ℥ ℞.*

He likewise commendeth this Medicine following, as being very certaine and approved, and of great vertue to stay the sicknesse.

*℞. Rad. Filipendul. ℥ ij. fiat potus, cape ℥ j. cum vitelloovi, singulis diebus.*

An Elecuary.

*℞. Conf. Rosar. Antiq. ℥ j. carnis Cydon. cond. conf. Rad. Sapphit. an. ℥ ℞. pul. Diacorger. Frig. Trichif. Carab. an. ℥ j. Bol. Armen. ℥ j. sang. Dracon. ℥ ij. cum syrup. Rosar. siccar. fiat opiata, exhibenda ad ℥ j. per se, vel cum aqua Plantag.*

Lib. Exper.

*Galen* teacheth in this Medicine, which may be both injected, and also taken inwardly.

*℞. Nucag.*

℞ *Mucag gummi Tragacanth. & Arabicis aq. Plantag. extract. ℥iij. Saci Plantag. ℥iij. fiat injectio, iniicitur in uterum. & si patui probe.* An Injection.

This injection following, may also be very good.  
℞ *Stacur elygiar. ℥iij. Mucilag. gummi Tragacanth. extract. in aqua. Cardui. Chalycol. ℥iij. Amil. ℥i. misce. fiat injectio.* Another.

You shall also make use of this Pessary, if there be need:

℞ *Bol. Armen. Ferre sigillat. an. ℥i. Lithargir. ℥ss. cum albumine oui fiat astringens pessarium.* An astringent Pessary.

With this you may annoint your Pessary made fit for the purpose, either of cotton, or Linnen cloth.

### CHAP. VIII.

#### *Of the Retention, and Stopping of the After-purgings in Woman newly delivered.*



As a Woman newly delivered is subiect to many accidents, by the overmuch flowing of her naturall courses: So is she likewise subiect to more dangerous and deadly chances, if they be suppressed and staid. *Galen* saith, that these after purgings, (which he calleth *Lochia*) are purgings of ill humours, which have bene gathered in the body all the time, that the woman went with child: For the child drawing to itselfe, the sweetest

*Porrhetic. 1.  
Sect. 2.  
What Lochia are.*

and most familiar part of the blood, leaves the worst, which otherwise, if the woman were not with child; should bee voided out every Moneth. And if the monthly sicknesse staied doth bring manie inconveniencies to a woman, then much more these *Lochia* being suppressed, must breed much more danger.

A sentence of  
*Hippocrates.*

*Hippocrates* in his first booke *De Morbis Mullier:* witnesseth this plainely, saying; That when the After-purgings come in lesse quantity, then is fit, then the woman in child-bed falls into a sharpe Ague, she is troubled with a paine in her stomacke, shee finds herselfe ill, through all her body: shee feels a paine in the ioynts of her hands, in her thighes, and hips, the places about her necke, backe, and groine are sore; and there is a weaknesse in every part: Shee falls into a vomiting of fleame, and also of bitter and sharp matter: and finally, shee is in danger to bee lame and impotent of some of her members: For the Matrice hath an affinity and connexion, with many parts of the body.; as with the head and stomack. And if this matter be transported and carried to the head, breast, and lungs, and there make an abode, then the woman dyes presently; but if it be voided by the mouth, or nose, then she may escape.

The stopping  
of the After-  
purgings causes  
death.

Outward  
causes.

The causes of this suppression are of two kinds, either inward, or outward: The outward causes are sadnes, griefe, suddain apprehension of some ill newes, feare, frighting, and such like passions of the mind: Likewise, cold which the woman hath taken, which



which shutteth up the veines of the Matrice; a bad dyet, & amongst other things, drinking of cold and raw water: which hath beene noted by *Hippocrates* to be very hurtfull vnto women with child.

*Lib. de Aire lo-  
cis, & Aquis.*

Now concerning the inward causes, the same Author writes: at the ulcers which happen by reason of a long and troublesome delivery, doe cause an inflammation; and swelling, which makes the side of the wombe come together, and shuts up the orifices of the veines thereof: from whence proceeds suppression of the after-purgings. Likewise the over great quantity of thicke and grosse blood, may be the cause, as also the weaknesse of the Matrice, the which because it hath beene sore wearied and troubled in the delivery, and thereby lost all strength, is not able to disburden and free it selfe of the blood whereof it is full.

*Lib. de morb.  
Mulier.  
Inward causes.*

*Hippocrates* also in the same place gives another cause, which is, when the mouth of the said womb is shrunke, or turned awry, or else, because the sides of it are sunke downe, shut together and inflamed.

*Hippoc. loco ci-  
tato.*

For the Cure hereof, shee must observe an order of dyet, which shall be moistning, and opening Her meate and drinke must be such; as we have formerly prescribed, for one newly delivered. Shee shall take operative broths, thereby to open the orifices of the veines, which are much stopt: and according to the cause, so the remedies must be fitted as if it come by any sudden apprehension, griefe, or anger, then must she be pleasant, and make herselfe,

*Dyets.*

as merry as she can. If it proceed of any inflammation or heat that hath thickned the blood, then must she use Medicines, that shall moderately coole and moisten, as Apozemes made with the leaves and roots of *Succory*, *Burnet*, *Emlive*, *Agrimony*, *Maydenhaire*, *Conchgrasse*, or *Gramen*, *Hops*, roots of *Persly*, and *Asparagus*, *Violet flowers*, with the sirups of *Maydenhaire*, and *de quinq; radicibus*. If it be needfull to attenuate and cut, or to evacuate any grosse and clammy humours, which shut up the Orifices of the veines: it will not bee amisse to use this fomentation, so that there be no great inflammation of the part.

A Fomentation

℞ *Malu. Bisul. Parietar. Matricar. an. m. i. Abrotan. Origan. Aneth. Calaminth. Artemis an. ss. Flor. sambuc. Chamemel. Mel. lot. an. P. i. sem. Lini sœnugrec. an. ʒ. ij. fiant sacculi duo, Coquantur. in aq. Communi, addendo sub finem vini albi parum profotu.*

Of the foresaid ingredients you may likewise prepare fumes, halfe Baths, and also injections for the Matrice.

If the said after-purgings are suppressed because the inner Orifice of the Matrice is closed, or turned aside, then will it be very necessary for the Chirurgeon, (after he hath considered that there is neither paine nor distemperature) to set it right againe, by putting up Pessaries, which shall provoke and bring downe the after-purgings, as this following.

The meanes to set the wombe right.

A Pessary.

℞ *Cere nova. ʒ. iij. Mell. ʒ. i. Syrac. liq. ʒ. s. Ol. Muschell. ʒ. ij. liquefiant omnia simul, addendo Mirrb. Aloes*

## Lib. 3. the happy Delivery of Women.

231

*Aloes. an. ʒ i s. Farts. Epimar. ʒ vi; auferendo ab igne, impone telam ex Canabe de qua cooperatur p: Sarrinum ad usum.*

You shall first frame a Pessary, and then it shall be covered with the said cloth; or else dipped and covered with the said Medicine.

You may also make little round bags of a fingers length, in the forme of a Pessary, which you shall fill or stufte with the herbe Mercury, first bruised or beaten, and this may serue for a Pessary; this herbe is very much commended. If it be needfull to have the Pessary stronger; you may put thereto a little Mugwort, Savine, and Balme.

It will be very profitable to binde the thighs hard and to rub the legges and thighs, especially on the inside, all along the crurall veine: you may also apply great Cupping-glasses in the said places. Let her legges and thighs be washed, with that decoction which was set downe before for the fomentation. The same decoction also may serue for Clysters, dissolving therein *Hiera*, or *Benedict. Decoction*, and *Mel Mecuriale*.

Ligatures and frictions.

But we must preferre before all these Medicines, that which is the most soveraigne, which is letting of bloud in the foot; out of the *Saphena*; or in the *Poplitica*, which is in the bending of the gartring place: For by this meanes we shall manifestly meet with the cause of the sicknesse: And herein wee shall follow the example of *Hippocrates*, who caused the woman servant of *Stymargus* to be let bloud because her sicknesse or purgings were stayed after

Opening a veine in the foot, is the most soveraigne remedy.

she

she was delivered, and by this meanes she was well discharged of them, although before she had beene in great and generall Convulsions.

*De Morbis Mul-  
lier. lib. 1.*

The same Authour saith, that a Woman that hath these purgings stayed, must have present helpe, for feare lest there happen some great inflammation to the part, so that except shee bee presently let bloud, she is in danger of death. Her belly also must be kept loose by Clysters, and if she can vomit easily, shee must be helped that way also.

*Epidem. 6.*

*Galen* saith, that hee hath brought downe these purgings in Women that were pale, leane & weak, by letting her bloud in good quantity.

I have not here set downe any Medicines to bee taken by the mouth, because I have written many or this kind in the Chapters going before, wherein I have treated of the meanes how to make the child or after-birth come forth when they bee stayed, which Medicines have power also to provoke the courses or after-purgings.

CHAP. IX.

*Of the false conception stayed, and abiding in the  
Woman after her delivery.*

**I**T may happen to some Women, that after they have bin well delivered of their children, there may stay with them one or more false conception. Some of these false conceptions sticke fast to the

the wombe, some are unfasned, and loose. If they be small, they come forth together with the purgings; but if they be big, they oftentimes stay, and abide within. And in this case the Chirurgeon must be carefull; for if they be bigge and cleave to the wombe, they may bring much inconvenience to the woman, by their long staying behinde. So then it will be necessary for him to know whether there be any of this kinde, and of what nature it is, which he shall learne of the Mother, by demanding of her how she found her selfe all the time she went with child. First then, let him enquire of her whether she were very big at that time, and if she had any hardnesse in any part of her belly; whether shee hath bene used to any such accident with her other children: for there are women which at every birth have of these false conceptions, and amongst others Mistresse *Dragonologie* hath shewed the proof hereof: For she going with her second child, could assure me, that then she had a false conception, because she had one with her first child: which shee came to know by reason of a certaine hardnesse which she had upon her left side, neare to her short ribs, where she felt a great paine, yea, and her ribs seemed to be borne up, or thrust outward: And indeed this Gentlewoman after shee was delivered, brought forth one bigger than one fist, and before she could be rid of it her belly was swolne with paine and murmurings about her Navell, and toward her loins: she was often troubled with throws: as if she should be delivered againe, by reason the

Difference of  
false concep-  
tion.

A Story.

Signs.

Gg

nature

nature that drives, to put and send that forth which was unpartiall.

Besides these symptoms, women that have false conceptions somewhat bigger, and cleaving fast to the wombe; are troubled with great paine about the navell, with unquietnes, warring of the mouth, vomiting, and heavinesse downward. The Pulse is small and frequent, and some Women in this case have the Strangury, because the false conception doth presse the necke of the bladder; and to conclude, almost the same accidents are here, that happen when there is a Mole or dead child.

Those false conceptions that are small, though two, three, four, or more in number (as there may be many) they come forth easily, & are conveyed away with the ordinary purgings, but if they be great and hard, they are voided with much difficulty, especially if they stick to the wombe, and then there is danger that they will turne into a Mole; which must speedily be prevented; although Hippocrates writeth that this should be done with prediction. Now this may be prevented (as he saith) by three meanes: first, by the use of resolving Baths, which have power to moisten the whole body, and so to enlarge and dilate the passage of the Matrix, that it may come forth; the second is by Clysters and purgations, which may purge forth excrements, and also bring downe the naturall courses afresh. Thirdly, by Injections, which may provoke and stirre up the expulsive faculty of the Matrix, to expell the purgings, and with them the false conception.

The pregnant sicke.

Hip. lib. de sterilibus.

Cure.

conception contained in the wombe. But because all these remedies have beene handled in the last chapter, I refer the Chirurgion thither.

CHAP. X.

Of the falling downe or precipitation of the Matrice.

**T**He ancient writers have observed, that the matrice moveth and changeth his place, diversly: and as *Hippocrates* saith, the Matrice causeth great paines in divers places, according as it seeketh, and placeth it selfe.

*De Morbis mul. lib. 2.*

If it rise toward the head, then the veines which are in the nose, and under the eyes, suffer paine, the head is heavy, and sometime the woman someth at the mouth. If the said Matrice moveth toward the liver, presently the woman is deprived of her speech, her teeth are set, and her colour grows wan and pale. If it incline toward the ribs, then the woman falls into a cough with paine of her side: and the matrice hard and painfull to be touched, as if there were some ulcer, & she is troubled also with shortnesse of breath, and sometimes, with Convulsions: and if she continue thus long, she will grow lame: Againe if the Matrice turne to one side, there will bee a paine felt, right against the place, to which it inclines, together with a paine in the backe: and at last shee becomes lame of that side, as *Hippocrates*,

*Hippocras. lib. 2. de morb. mulier. de natura mulier. lib. 2. Epidem.*

Hippo:rat. Epi-  
dem. 2.

ter, and *Aetius* doe witness: when it beareth downe towards the groine, and passage of the Urine, then the paine is more violent, together with a dulnesse and numnes of the thigh: and suppression of urine: as likewise if it be cast backe toward the great gut, then the excrements of the belly are stopped; If it fall down lower, even to the thighs, then there will be a Convulsion or crampe of the great toe; and the hips and thighs will be pained. And therefore not, unaptly did *Plato* compare the Matrice to a living creature, which was as it were ingrafted upon another living creature. For the Matrice hath voluntary motion toward every part, and certainly, *Scimus uterum naturaliter, ut semens excipiat, hiaro, & ipso suscepto constringi.*

Plato.

How the Ma-  
trice moveth,

But these situations and changings of place must not be understood in an exact sense. For it is unlikely, nay, impossible that the Matrice should so run from one side of the body to another, that it should altogether leave his owne place. And this hath *Galen* very well noted, saying, that sometimes the Matrice ascendeth upward, and sometimes it is turned aside: not that of it selfe it leaves his naturall place but because it is drawne by something else: that is, by the ligaments which hold it up, & by the nerves, arteries, and veines to which it is annexed. To this authority of *Galen*, I will adde farther, that the Matrice may be shut up, and gathered into it selfe, and so draw with it those parts to which it is fastned; offending & affecting them, by some spirits, vapors, or wind, which it may communicate unto them.

*Galen* in lib. 3. de  
Articul. com.

How the Ma-  
trice changeth  
place.

But



But I will leave this curious speculation to Physicians, and will onely meddle with that, which belongs to Chirurgions, concerning the precipitation, or falling downe of the Matrice, of which there are three kinds.

The first when the necke thereof (which is called *Vagina*) sincketh and falleth downe, even to the entrance of the naturall parts, and drawes, a litle with it, the body of the Matrice: And this we may easily learne of *Hippocrates*, who saith, that the Matrice commeth downe in such sort, that you may apply a liniment thereunto: And againe, that it commeth nearer to the entrance, than is needfull.

The first falling of the matrice.

Hipp. Lib. de natura Pueri.

The second kind is, when the body of the Matrice falleth into the ourward necke, called *Vagina*, and is thrust a litle out of she entrance, of the naturall parts, and then the inward necke, which is suncke downe, shewes it selfe to the light, in the forme of the top of a mans yard: Which *Hippocrates* also affirmes when hee saith, that the wombe commeth by litle and litle, out of the naturall parts.

Hipp Lib. de matuta Muliebri. The second kind.

Hipp. Lib. de Sterilibus de morbo Mulier.

The third kinde is, when the body and necke of the Matrice is all sunke downe, and turned the wrong side outward, as one should turne the crowne of his hat; and then commeth cleane out of the naturall parts, and hangs betweene the thighes, in the bignesse of a mans fist; or more, not unlike to the cod or purses of a mans privie parts, as *Galen* writes.

The third kind.

Galib. 14. de usu partium.

The generall cause hereof is, because the ligaments.

ments, which should hold and fasten it, are resolved and broken, which may proceed either of an inward or an outward cause.

Outward causes.

The outward cause may be, some fall, or blow; or for that the woman hath lifted some heavy burthen, or hath beene in some rage or cholera; or had a violent Cough: running also, dancing, leaping, riding in a Coach, taking cold of her feet, sitting upon a cold stone, and overmuch cooling of the Matrice, may be causes thereof.

Inward causes.

The inward causes, are abundance of moisture, which hath relaxed the ligaments; or else a longing desire which a woman may have for the company of a man, which may also happen to maids and barren-Women, as *Hippocrates* writeth: Another cause may be, the long suppression of the naturall courses, which sometimes makes a woman grow Virill, or mankind, as *Hippocrates* witnesses of *Phetusa*, wife of *Pitheus*, who became like a man with a beard, and a mans voice.

*Hippocrat. Epidem. 2.*

*Hippocrat. Epidem. 6.*

*Hipp. de Natura Mulier. 2.*

The said *Hippocrates* giveth another reason contrary to the former, which is, because she hath had the company of her husband too soone after her delivery, while her sicknesse is yet upon her.

*Hippocrat. de Electione Fetus*

*Gal. de facul. Natur. lib. 3.*

But commonly this falling downe of the Matrice doth come (as *Hippocrates* noteth) by being ill delivered: To which also *Galen* subscribeth, making a similitude of it, to two that wrestle together, one of which falling to the ground, drawes his fellow with him, and makes him fall also; even so, the Matrice striving to put forth the child, doth thrust forth

forth it selfe also ; especially if the ligaments A comparison. which should hold it to the backe, bee naturally loose and weake. It may also happen, that while the Midwife drawes forth the childe, or the after-birth, the Matrice may follow it together.

In this case, although *Hippocrates* in his Booke before cited, seeme to be of opinion, that there is no remedy but for young women, leaving elder women without helpe. Yet I have cured them, Both old and young may be cured hereof. even of all ages, with very good successe.

For the Cure therefore wee have three intentions. The Cure. The first, to bring the Matrice into his owne place : the second, to keepe it there : the third, to strengthen it being there kept. For the first, let the Chirurgion place the woman in this sort : Let her lie upon her backe, with her legges higher than her head, and her feet drawne up in such sort, that her heeles may almost touch her hinder parts, with her thighs and knees spread abroad.

If the Matrice bee fallen downe, but a little, it may easily be put up, nay, it will even goe up of it selfe : But if it be much fallen downe before it bee put up, it must bee suppled and softned, that so it may returne more easie, and with lesse paine : Let it bee anointed therefore with the cooling Oyntment of *Galen*, or else with some such Liniment as this.

*R. Accur. Anser. Gallin. an. ʒj. Ol. Amygd. An Ointment.*  
*datar. dale. Lilior. an. ʒj. Cere parum, fiat*  
*litur.*

For

For a shift you may take fresh Butter and Oyle of Roses mingled together: and then use this Fomentation warme.

A Fomentation      R $\bar{c}$ . *Mala. Parietar. Matricar. Ectonic. Salvia an. m. i. flor. Chamamel. Melilot. an. P. i. Rosar. rub. p. ii. Coquantur in equis partibus vini & aqua profuta.*

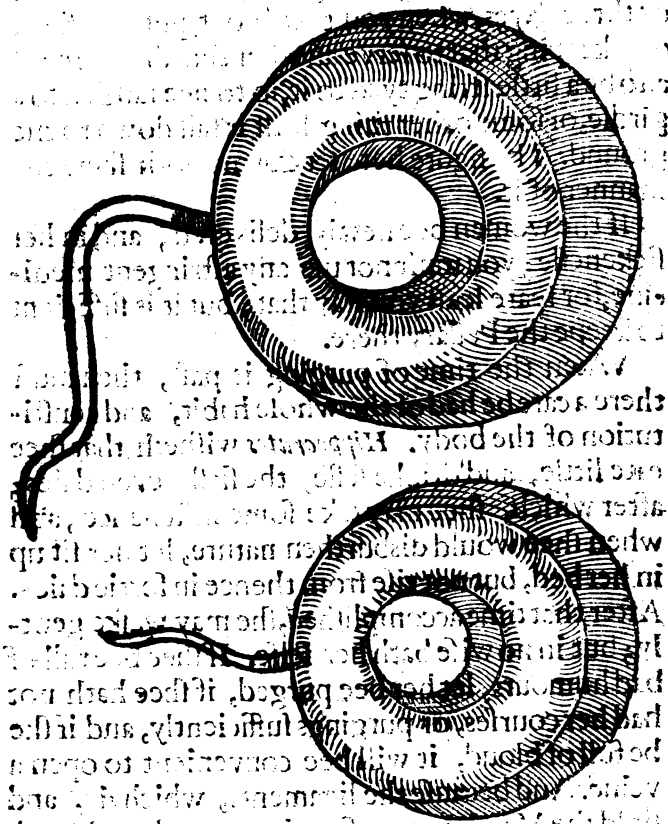
After that you have used this Fomentation, put up the Matrice gently with a soft linnen cloth, and when it is put up, let the woman draw up her breath as we use to bid them that have a Hernia, or bursting to be put up, and by this meanes the Matrice will be brought to his place the more easily. Beside you must remember, that if there be any tension, hardnesse or inflammation in the Matrice, to soften and supple it with the aforesaid Liniment and Fomentation, and so will the inflammation be asswaged. And if you finde that the bladder or great gut bee full of excrements (as I have seene not long since in a poore Woman of *Masson*, by meanes whereof the Matrice was shut and kept out) then first you must make way for the Urine by a Catheter, and also void out the excrements by Clisters.

A good observation.

The second means to help up the Matrice.

For the second intension, which is to keepe the Matrice in his place, when it is well put up and placed, the best and surest meanes is to thrust up a Pessary, such a one as is here described, which hath this power to keepe the Matrice up, and yet not put it to any paine.

Be-



Beside, it will not hinder the Matrice from purging out such evacuations, as a woman newly delivered hath, or any other humour, which may be contained in the wombe: For this Pessary hath a hole in the midst of it, to give such excrements free passage and issue.

Hh

The

The Pessary being put up, let it abide there two or three dayes, when you take it out, put up a fresh one, keeping that to serve another time. There must also be a little string tyed to it, so to bee fastned to a girdle, or some other thing, least it fall down to the ground: The figure here set downe doth shew the manner of it.

When astrin-  
gent medicines  
are to be used.

If the woman bee newly delivered, and in her sicknesse; you must not use any astrigent medicine, for feare least you stay that; but it is sufficient to keepe the Pessary there.

Hip. de natura  
Muliebri.

When the time of purging is past, then must there a care be had of the whole habit, and constitution of the body. Hippocrates wisheth that shee eat little, and drinke lesse, the first seven daies; after which, shee may take some sustenance, and when shee would disburthen nature, let her sit up in her bed, but not rise from thence in fortie daies. After that time accomplished, she may walke gently; but in no wise bath her selfe. If shee bee full of bad humours, let her bee purged, if shee hath not had her courses, or purgings sufficiently, and if she be full of bloud, it will bee convenient to open a veine. And because the ligaments, which tie, and hold the Matrice, are oftentimes much moistned, and relaxed with slime, and steame, which fals upon them; it will be necessary to drie them, by evacuating, and drawing away the humour, which is the cause hereof. To this purpose, Hippocrates doth much commend vomiting, because it riddeth away such flegmaticke humours, as commonly are  
in

Hip. de morb.  
Muliebri. lib. 2.

Vomiting is  
necessary.

in the stomacke, by turning them another way. Besides that, the stomacke while it heaves it self upward, lifts, and drawes up the Matrice with it; but this must be done considerately, because strong and violent vomiting shakes & troubles the *Diaphragme* and guts, making them presse downward; and by this meanes keepe downe the Matrice.

Here also will it bee availeable to apply large cupping glasses, on the top of the hips, under the paps, and under the Navell: as also to bind the up-  
Cupping glasses.

per part of the armes somewhat hard. Moreover you shall let the woman have good scents to smell to: as also some things of an ill sent, to put up beneath.  
She must have sundry smells.

Liniments and Plaisters may likewise be applied upon the backe, belly, and groine, such as we have set downe in the Chapter of Abortment.

As for the third intention, which is to strengthen the wombe, you must use to this purpose, *Pessaries*, *Perfumes*, *Suffumigations*, and *Injections* put up, and  
The third meanes to strengthen the mother,  
 applied to the part.

Let the Pessary be of the same fashion prescribed before: but onely let the wax with which it is covered, be compounded in this manner.

*Rc. Cera lib. ij. Baccat. Laur. Absinth. Rosar. rub. an. ʒ. j. Nuc. Cupress. Balaust. an. ʒ. j. sang. Dracon. Mastick. Myrrh. an. ʒ. iij. liquefiant simul addendo unguent. Comitiss. ʒ. j.* With this wax thus prepared, you may cover the Pessaries made of Corke, in the same fashion as is already described.

Let the perfumes bee made of the Ingredients  
 H h 2 . . . . . afore said,

Ill smells to bee put in to the Pessaires. as of *rosaid*, putting thereto a little *Ladanium*, and *Assa fetida*; because the Matrice flyeth from any thing that is of a bad favour; and let the woman receive this fume beneath, sitting in a chaire, with a hole in it. For most suffumigation, they shall be made thus.

The suffumigation.

℞. *Tapsi. Babat. Centimod. Absinth. Matricar. Consol. utriusque sol. Cap. ess. an. m. ℥. Baecar. Lant. Nucum. Cypress. Balsamior. an. ʒ. S. Cortic. Quercus, Pini, Theris, an. ʒ. vi Rosar. rub. p. ʒ. si it omnium decoctio in aquis partibus vini austeri, & aq. fabrorum, pro suffitu.*

*Hippocrates* counselleth to put herein some things of an ill favour, as *Assa fetida*: You may also inject this decoction, but then let it not be made altogether so astringent; or else let this serve for an Injection.

An Injection.

℞. *Fol. Myrt. Lent. sc. Summitat. rubi. Bistort. Pentaphil. Plantag. an. m. j. Rosar. rub. Hyperic. an. p. j. cort. Fraxin. ʒj. Rasur. lign. guaiac. ʒ. S. fiat omnium decoctio, in colatura ad ℞. ij. dissolve scripto Rosis siccis, & de Absinthi. an. ʒ. ij. fiat Injectio.*

*Hipp. Lib. de natura Muliebri.*

*Hippocrates* commendeth a fomentation, made with a mans urine, and afterwards one made with the leaves of the Masticke tree.



CHAP. XI.

of an effect, where the sides of the necke of the wombe are united and joyned together.



Here is another troublesome accident which chanceth to some Women after their delivery, which is the uniting and sticking together of the necke of the wombe: and this happens through hard travaile, which hath torne and excoriated the sides thereof: or else by reason of some inflammation or ulcer which hath there hapned, through some sharpe and biting humour, which hath corroded and ulcerated the said part: which being neglected and ill cured, the sides not being healed and scarred; it happens that they are joyned and grow together, and so become one body.

The cause.

Galen hath made mention of this accident; and we have sometimes seene the experience of it.

Gal. lib. de dissectione uteri.

As for the cure hereof, the Woman must be purged and let blood, then bathed for divers dayes together: and the Bath must be made of emollient things; likewise there must be many emollient fomentations used to her lower parts, and after them divers liniments, such as we have prescribed in divers places: when the parts are sufficiently softened; then must you place the woman in the same manner as is described, when shee is to bee delivered:

Cure.

The practice,

then when you perceive the smalnesse and straightnesse of the passage, you shall apply a *Dilatory Instrument*, made in the forme of a *speculum Matricis*, and by little and little you shall dilate and stretch the parts so joyned together, which will part and sever one from another, without any effusion of blood: And this have I practised with good success of late dayes upon a tenant of Madam *Sacon*, as I have declared before; and this I did when she was ready to lie downe, and yet no ill accident hapned upon it.

But if so be the callosity should be so hard (as by continuance of time it may be) that the said parts should grow together againe, and could not be softened, then will it be necessary first to make an incision, that so it may bee dilated more easily. And this hath *Monf. Pincau* and my selfe practised upon a Gentlewoman, as I have more at large set downe in my Booke of the nursing and government of children, in the Chapter of those that have their naturall parts shut up, and without passage.

Must take heed  
of letting it  
grow together  
againe.

The rest of the cure must be performed in that manner which I have set downe in the place last cited: and herein must a speciaall care be had, that the parts joyn not, nor knit together againe: to prevent the which, the woman shall weare a Pessary continually, untill such time as the skar be perfectly growne and confirmed: And to this purpose let the *speculum Matricis* bee often used, to enlarge the part: For it is certaine, that all such Membranes as have been joyned and grown together, when they

are

Lib. 3. *the happy Delivery of Women.* 247

are divided and severed, doe hardly come to that length, and bignesse that they were of at the first. And this I have often observed and amongst other places in the month, wherof *Mons. Pigray* and *Mons. Pineau* the Kings Chirurgions in ordinary, & sworn at Paris, will bear me witnesse, that I together with them cured an honest man, who had one side of his cheeke grown fast to his jaw, which made him that hee could not open his mouth, nor speake plaine. I cut and separated the membrane, a good way, which did knit and tye these parts together, but while I went about to cicatrise both sides which I had divided: had I not had the greater care to have hindered it, the parts had growne together againe, that I was constrained to make a new separation three divers times.

FINIS.



# THE NURSING OF CHILDREN.

WHEREIN IS SET DOWNE  
the Ordering and Government of  
them from their Birth.

Together with the meanes to helpe and  
free them from all such diseases  
as may happen unto them.

Written in French by

JAMES GUILLEMEAU,  
the French Kings Chirurgion in Ordinary.



—————

L O N D O N,

Printed by *Anne Griffin*, for *Loyce Norton*, and  
*Richard Whitaker*, 1635.

THE  
TO DIRECTOR  
BUREAU


MEMORANDUM FOR THE DIRECTOR  
FROM THE [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]



# THE PREFACE TO Ladies, wherein they are ex- horted to nurse their Children themselves.

**A**ulus Gellius (in my opinion) did not  
awisse in putting no difference be-  
twene a woman that refuses to nurse  
her owne child, and one that kills her  
child, as soone as shee hath conceived;  
that shee may not bee troubled with bearing it nine  
months in her wombe. For why may not a woman with  
as good reason, deny to nourish her child with her  
blood, in her wombe, as to deny it her milke be-  
ing borne? since the milke is nothing else but blood  
whitened, being now brought to perfection and ma-  
turity.

But some will say that the child may be delivered to  
some other woman to nurse it, and that the Mother  
may have an eye and care over it: But (Gentle La-  
dies) here I desire you to consider with me the great  
inconveniencies that may hence arise, which though  
they be infinite, yet I will reduce them to foure heads.

1. First there is danger least the child be changed  
and another put in his place.
2. Then that naturall affection which should be be-

## The Preface to Ladies.

twixt the mother and the child by his means is diminished.

3: Thirdly, it may be feared, that some bad conditions or inclinations may be derived from the Nurse into the child.

4. And lastly, the Nurse may communicate some imperfections of her body into the child.

1. As for the first point, which is the changing of the child, that may easily come to passe, because as soon as the child is borne and Christened, the Mother presently delivers it to the Nurse, to be carried into the Care of; and the child being wholly left to the discretion of the Nurse, may by some ill chance be stifled, over-laid, be let fall, or so come to an untimely death, or else may be devoured, spoiled, or disfigured by some wild beast, Wolfe, or Dog, and then the Nurse fearing to be punished for her negligence, may take another child into the place of it, which can hardly ever be marked and distinguished: And indeed when children grow somewhat big, & are brought home from Nurse, if they prove not like their parents in body, in countenance, or with the Proverb goes, That they are changed at Nurse; which sometimes may be truer, than they are otherwise.

The Historiographers report that Artaxbar King of the Epirottes being old had one only son, whose Nurse was corrupted with great gifts to change him, and to take a Gentleman's sonne into his place. But when the King was dead, the Nurse repenting her selfe of this wickednesse, revealed the error: whereupon ensued such terrible wars, betweene the lawfull and the supposed son, that both of them lost their lives in a battail. Upon  
this



## The Preface to Ladies.

this occasion, Thomythus the seventh King of the Lacedemonians leaving two sons behind him, when he died; the Lacedemonians chose the younger of them for their King, because he had been nursed by the Queene his Mother, and rejected the eldest, who had been brought up by a strange woman; fearing lest he had been changed by his Nurse.

2. For the second point which is a natural affection, without doubt that cannot be so earnest, either from the mother toward the child, or from the child toward the mother; if she have not nursed him and given him sucke. For if she nurse him, he sucks & draws her own blood. It bert upon grows a familiar acquaintance; & the child when he comes to yeeres of discretion finds himselfe bound to his mother, for many benefits: both in that she hath borne him nine months in her womb, and also because she hath nursed him; washed him, and often made him cleane. In recompence whereof he endeavors to shew her a thousand delights, to make her forget or take in good part, so much care and paines, as shee hath taken with him. He plays a number of jests tricks about her, he kisses her, strokes her haire, soffe, and leaves: he flatters her, he counterfeits anger and other passions, and as he groweth bigger he findes other sports with her, which causeth that they beare one another such an affection as cannot be expressed; & makes that they can never be parted: When he is bigge, and comes to be weaned, if one chide his nurse he cries; and stamps; and if one offers to take him out of his Nurses armes, he will flie in their faces; and if it were possible he would even put out their hearts: & all this proceeds from that inward affection of the child, to which no

## The Preface to Ladies.

*love can bee compared. And heretofore Plato justly said, That children would never love their parents so well; but that their fathers doe often beare them in their arms, and the mothers give them suck at their owne breasts.*

*And heretofore we have a memorable example in Cornelius Scipio, who when hee had condemned tenne of his most valiant Captains to death, he would not beare his owne Brother Scipio Africanus intreating for them, and yet granted them pardon to one that had bin his Foster brother, and sucked the same Nurse: which being objected to him by his owne brother, saying; That they had becom borne both of one Mother, hee answered him, That his Nurse-Mother had deserved better of him than his owne mother had done. One of the family of the Gracchi, returning from the warre, met his owne Mother, and his Nurse together: but he addressing himselfe, first to his Nurse, presented to her a Girdle of gold, and then to his Mother a Jewell of Silver: which shee taking indignely, and rebuking him with reproaches, hee replyed: I know (Mother) that you bore me nine moneths in your wombe, yet that was out of necessitie, because you could doe no otherwise; but when I was borne, then you forsooke me, and my Nurse-mother willingly entertained me, carried me three yeares in her armes, and nourished mee with her owne blood.*

3. *As for the manners and conditions of the child, there is no doubt to be made, but that they are better bred and fashioned by the Mother, than by the Nurse. For first it is delivered by learned writers, that the Manners and conditions of the minde, doe follow the temper-*

## The Preface to Ladies.

temperament of the body, and the temperament ariseth out of the nourishment: so that commonly such as the humours are, such prove the manners. Hence must we conclude, that the childe that suckes a Nurse that is vicious and wicked, sucketh also from her her faults and vices: And beside, when the child comes to understanding, and observes what the Nurse speaks and doth, he retaines that, sayes it after her, and imitates her: and that which is imprinted from the infancy, will hardly or never be rooted out. For this cause Plato warnes us not to speak or shew anything before a child, which is not decent and honest: and Aristotle forbids to let a child see any wanton or lascivious picture. Then (to returne to our Nurse) we may be assured that the Milke (wherewith the child is nourished two years together) hath as much power to make the children like the Nurses, both in body and mind, as the seed of the Parents hath to make the children like them. For although the child be borne of honest Parents, neverthelesse the bad nurture of a wicked Nurse, will make the child vicious and wicked: For (as the Proverbe is) Nurture prevailes more than Nature. This may be plainly observed in all things that have life: for a faire and flourishing tree which hath bin bred in a good and fat ground, if it be transplanted into a barren ground, becomes a shrub, and beares no fruit that is good and tastfull. Likewise, the grain that is sowed in a good ground, will beare a faire and odouriferous flower; but if it be cast into bad ground, it will bring forth a bastard flower, without any good or pleasing smell. It is reported, that a certaine child was nourished with the milke of

## The Preface to Ladies.

a *Ritch*: But he would rise in the night and *hauke* with other dogs. Plato going about to give a reason why Alcibiades was so hardy, although he were an Athenian, (who naturally were milke and timorous) resolves it thus; because the said Alcibiades had beene nursed by a Lacedemonian woman, which is a very stout and valiant Nation.

4. As for the imperfections of the body which children may borrow from their Nurses, although they be very many, yet consider only those which the corpulencie and diseases of the Nurse may bring them. Tacitus writeth, that the Germans of all other people are the biggest and strongest of body, and the reason is, because they are nursed by their mothers, which are big of stature. And it is observed, that they which put forth their children to women of small stature, have them neither so bigge, nor strong and able of body, as if they had brought them up themselves. If a young Lambe sucke a Goat, it is found by experience, that the wooll of it will be harder than of other sheepe, and he will prove more fierce and wilde than is naturall for his kinde.

And to this purpose Procopius relates a Story of Polopeia, the daughter of Theseus, who being deliuered in secret of a son, and desirous to conceale her immodestie, caused him to be cast into a Forrest, where he being found by a Shepherd, was brought up and nourished with Goats milke (from whence he tooke the name of *Ægillus*) which made him so swift of foot, that every one did admire him for his wimbleness and quickness in running.

Now concerning the diseases of Nurses, you shall

find

## The Preface to Ladies.

find more of them, polluted and infected with the french Poxes, and other diseases; than sound and healthfull. And I have known Nurses give little children the French Poxes, who afterwards lying with their owne parents, have likewise infected them.

Now what a disgrace and what a sorrow and griefe of heart, this would be to a mother, if such a chance should happen. I leave unto you (faire Ladies) to iudge.

And therefore every Mother should endeavour, by all meanes possible (if she bee not sickly, or too tender) to nurse her child her selfe; since that nature hath bestowed swat ap upon her, onely for that purpose.

There are no other Creatures, but give sucke to their young ones, and if you doe but onely make a show, that you would take them from their dams, what a wyle and stirre doe they make? If you carry them away, they will runne after you and never leave till you have let goe your hold: desiring rather to loose their owne lives, than suffer their little ones to be carried away.

And therefore let Mothers never put forth their Children to nurse (if they themselves bee sound and healthfull) for feare of being changed. So shall you be sure to have Children, which will honour and love you, without setting their affections upon a stranger: Then shall you not need to make any doubt, but that your Children will bee vertuous, and honest; not being addicted to any vices, which they may take from their Nurses: and they shall not learne an dishonest, or undecent speeches; nor heare anything that shall be either lascivious, or unbefitting: then shall you be sure, that your children will bee healthfull, since they have benee

Kk

nourished

## The Preface to Ladies:

nourished with goat milke, and not fed with Apples,  
Pears, Sopps, and such like trash, which is often given  
them, for want of milke. And by this meanes, you shall  
have faire and goodly children, well brought up, docile,  
vertuous, loving, strong, and lusty, without any disea-  
ses: Then shall you be accounted for Mothers indeed, and  
not Step-mothers: and therefore never make your excu-  
ses, that you cannot, nor are not able to endure the trou-  
ble and paines, or that your husbands will not suffer you  
to do so.

And to conclude, I would have you imitate Blanche  
of Castile sometimes Queen of France, who nurs'd the  
King, S. Lewis, her Sonne her own selfe; and on a time  
as she was out of the way, her child being froward, a  
great Lady of the Court gave him sucke, so still him, and  
make him quiet: which coming to the Queenes eare, she  
presently took the child, and thrust her finger so farre  
down into his throat, that she made him vomit  
up all the milke hee had suckt of the said La-

dy; being very angry that any woman

should give her child sucke

but her selfe.

# THE



# THE CONTENTS of the Chapters in this present Book.

- 1 **Of the Nurse, and what care must be had in the choice of her;**
- 2 **Of the conditions that are required to be in good Milk;**
- 3 **What care the Nurse must have of all the parts of the child's body.**
- 4 **How free ought to shift and make cleane the child.**
- 5 **Of the child's cradle, where it must be set, and how hee must lie when he gets to sleepe.**
- 6 **When his owne Mother, or the Nurse may give the child sucke, how, and how often.**
- 7 **How the child must be made cleane after hee is awake, and unswathed.**
- 8 **What clothes and dressings the child must have, and at what time.**
- 9 **At what time the child may take other sustenance, beside Milke.**
- 10 **When a child ought to be weaned**
- 11 **Of the diseases which happen to a child.**
- 12 **How there may happen divers diseases unto little children, as they come forth of their mothers wombe.**
- 13 **Of the bignesse, and swelling of the head.**
- 14 **Of divers imperfections, that come with the child into the world.**
- 15 **Of the diseases of their eyes, eares and nose.**
- 16 **Of the sorenesse and ulcers of the mouth called *Aphtha*.**
- 17 **Of the swelling inflammation and sorenesse of the Gummes, called *Paronychia* and *Epyulis*.**
- 18 **Of the strings which the child hath under his tongue, that make him tongue-tyed.**
- 19 **Of the Cough.**

## The Contents.

- 20 Of the inflammation and swelling of the Navell.
- 21 Of the gripings and fretting in the childs belly.
- 22 Of the wormes.
- 23 Of breeding of teeth.
- 24 Of Convulsions that trouble children.
- 25 Of watchings.
- 26 Of the frights, starting and raving of young children in their  
Sleep.
- 27 Of the falling downe of the gut, or rupture.
- 28 Of the difficulty of making water.
- 29 The means to helpe children that pisse a bed, and cannot hold  
their water.
- 30 Of the gallings and rubbing away of the skinne in the groine and  
thighs.
- 31 Of the accidents which happen to the child's yard.
- 32 Of wenches that have no naturall passage from their birth.
- 33 Of the fundament that is closed and shut up.
- 34 Of the scabs that come on the childs head and face, unproperly  
called *Tinea*.
- 35 Of the Measels and the Pocks.
- 36 Of the cure of the small Pocks and the Measels.
- 37 How to preserve Children from having the Measels and the  
small Pocks.
- 38 Of the French Pocks.
- 39 Of the coming forth of haire in childrens backs and rines; cal-  
led *Veru's Piliis*.

The





# THE MANNER OF

## Nursing, and bringing up of chil-

dr̄en : Together with the Diseases,  
which may happen unto them and  
the cure thereof.

Written by **JAMES GUILLEMEAU** the  
French Kings Chirurgion in Ordinary  
and sworne at Paris.

### The Preface.



*I*s recorded by ancient Histories,  
that there have bene some Children,  
which have made a noyse, and cast  
forth excre, being yet in their mothers

belly: and for prooffe hereof, they relate, that in  
the Citie of Rascat, there was a child borne with  
two hornes, whose moans and lamentations were  
heard fourteene dayes before his birth: But this is  
rather Prodigious then Naturall, as S. Augu-  
stine saith, For a child naturally, neither laments  
nor cries, so long as he doth abide in his mothers  
wombe.

Metrop. Salub.  
Episc. 36.  
Scolion ad Ter-  
tul. lib. 9. de A-  
nim.

Aug. lib. 3. de  
civ. Dei. cap.  
31.

To the Reader.

And I have often observed, that a child nei-  
 ther cries, nor makes any noise, neither sighs,  
 though he be halfe come forth, when paine or an-  
 guish soe neer he suffers in the passing. But as  
 soone as he is borne, and sees the light (beside the  
 alteration of the eye, which he finds) even very  
 necessitie, and his owne feeling, doe force and as  
 it were bring from him, cries and moans, thereby  
 to shew in what need hee stands of helpe. Hee  
 craves and demands the face out of his owne mo-  
 ther to honour it, and see, other wise he would die  
 in a short space; except he were a second Codra-  
 tus the Martyr, who was epen from his tender  
 age deprived of all humane aid, and forsaken both  
 of Father and mother, and of the world beside.  
 But our Lord God did supply this want and  
 caused in recompence thereof, that a round cloud  
 coming downe from heaven, did encom-  
 passe him about and cov-  
 er him.

Matth. 10.  
 Martii, Lipon:  
 tom. 7.

with 2. 10. 10. 10.  
 - 10. 10. 10. 10.  
 - 10. 10. 10. 10.  
 - 10. 10. 10. 10.

sh 10. 10. 10.  
 10. 10. 10. 10.  
 10. 10. 10. 10.



# OF A NURSE, AND

*what election, and choice ought  
to be made of her.*

Herlinge



**T**Hough it were fit, that every mother should nurse her own child: because her Milke, which is nothing else, but the blood whited (of which he was made, and wherewith hee had beene nourished) the while he staid in his Mothers womb, will be alwayes more naturall, and familiar unto him, than that of a stranger; and also by nursing him her selfe, she shall be wholly acquainted his mother, yett since they may be hindered by sicknesse, or for that they are too weake and tender, or else because their Husbands will not suffer them, therefore I say, it will be very necessary to seek out another Nurse: and every one knowes how hard a thing it is to finde a good one, because they have bin so often beguiled, and deceived therein: which hath given mee occasion, first of all to shew some markes, whereby you may make some choice of one than is fit.

Herlinge

The difficulty of finding a good Nurse.

Now in chusing of a Nurse, these are the things

to

# The Nursing

to be considered: Her Birth and Parentage: her person: her behaviour: her mind: her milke: and her childe.

1.  
Her lineage.

(First, Concerning her Linage, she must come of a good stocke, or kindred; there being none of her race, whether it be grandfather, or grandmother, nay, not so much as one of her great grandfathers, or ancient progenitors, that hath ever beene stained, or spotted, either in body or minde: For, oftentimes we see, though the Parents bee healthfull, and sound, yet their children bee sometimes, either sickly, or fooles, or else viciously given: who receive such vices from their grandfather, or grandmother, yea, & sometimes from their great grandfathers, which troubleth many men, to think from whence these accidents may proceed: for it is very certaine, that there are many Children, which are diseased or deformed, either in body or mind, whose parents are very healthfull, & well featur'd: But yet, if you search farther, you shall finde that some of their progenitors have beene affected in this like manner.

2.  
Her Person.

Touching the Nurse's person; for her age, she shall be chosen, when she is at her full growth, which is about five and twenty yeares of age, from which time, to the five and thirtieth yeare, is the age wherein women are most temperate, healthfull, strong, and lusty: therefore one shall bee chosen, that is betwene five and twenty, and five and thirty yeares: Now, for her body, shee ought to be of a middle stature, neither too bigg, nor too little,

Her stature.

little, nor too fat, nor too leane, nor yet too grosse, having good fleshiè armes and legges; and her flesh being hard and firme: she must not be deformed, neither squint-eyed, lame, nor crump shouledred; she must bee one that is healthfull, and not subject to any disease; the complexion and colour of her body must be lively and Rosie: she must not be spotted with rednesse, and especially she should not have red haire; and therefore such as are of a browne complexion are held to bee best, whose haire is of a Chestnut colour, betweene yellow and blacke.

A red haired Nurse is commended.

She must have a pleasing countenance, a bright and cleare eye, a well formed Nose, neither crooked, nor of a bad smell, a ruddy mouth, and very white teeth: She must deliver her words well and distinctly, without stammering: and she must have a strong and big necke; for thereby (as Hippocrates saith) may one judge of the strength of the body. She must have a broad and large breast, garnished with two Paps, of a reasonable bignesse, neither limber, nor hanging downe, but betweene hard and soft, full of Azure veines and arteries, not being either knottie, or swolie bigger than they should be: the nipple, which is in the midst of the breasts, ought to be somewhat eminent, and with all, a ruddy colour like a Strawberry; it must bee of reasonable bignesse and thicknesse, and of an easie draught, that the childe may take it the better, and sucke the easier.

Her Countenance.

A Nurses perceptions.

She must not be with childe, neither should she

Hipp. lib. 2.  
Epidemior.

have her naturall purgings; though *Hippocrates* seeme, to allow the contrary: relating the story of a Nurse, whose body was full of Pustules, of which shee was freed, as soone as she had her ordinary sickness; desiring (as some interpreters would have it) to shew, that it is not without reason, for the Nurses health, that she should have her courses thereby to coole and cleanse the blood, whereof the milke is made.

3  
Her Manners.

3. Shee ought to be of a good behaviour, sober, and not given either to drinking or gluttony, milde, without being angry or fretfull: for there is nothing that sooner corrupts the blood, of which the milke is made, than choller or Cadasse: and therefore shee must be merry, playing & singing to the child, dandling and using him gently; and one that will not refuse to give him the breast at any time, for feare lest he cry. Shee must likewise be chaste, not desiring after her husbands company, and much lesse a strangers; because carnall copulation (as *Galen* saith) troubleth the blood, and so by consequence the milke; also it diminisheth the quantity thereof, by provoking the naturall purgations; and also makes her have an ill smell, (as *Aristotle* saith) because they heat themselves very much in this act: and which is worst, the Nurse thinking only to take her sport a little, may thereby prove with child.

4  
Her Minde.

4. Concerning her mind: Let her be sage, wise, discreet, that she may take care of her little one, and not lay him in any place, where he may en-  
ger

ger himselfe, to be either sucked or stifled: For there are more Nurses than should bee, which are such beasts, and so carelesse; who having their childe sucke in the night, as they lie with them in the bed, doe oftentimes fall asleepe upon them, and so stifle them. And she must also have discretion to judge somewhat neare what her little one crieth after, it being not able otherwise to expresse what it would have: Observing (as Galen saith) the childs disposition, that for thee may give him that which hee craves or desires, or else take away such things as shall offend him: playing with him, kissing him, dancing him gently in her armes, and singing withall: and she must likewise open him often, to lay and keepe him drie and cleane.

Gal. de Sanitat. tuenda.

*of the conditions which are required in good Milke.*

**T**He choice of good Milke is, that it be of a middle substance, that is to say, such as shall be neither too watrish, nor too thicke: For that which is too watrish and thin, may cause the child to have a scowring, and besides, it yeeldeth no good nutriment: and the milke which is too thicke, is easily crudled, and not so soone digested, and so causeth obstructions, from whence the matter of the stone is bred. As for the quantity of Milke: a Nurse should rather have too much than too little: because when there is but little, it will be hard for the child to draw it; when as if there be plenty, it will

The quality of good Milke.

Quantity of Milke.

come the easier, and even thrust out it selfe. Moreover, if the child should sucke the breast drie, then that which shall come in the roome of it, cannot be well concocted so soone: Besides, if the childe should chance to have an Ague, then would hee sucke and consume a great deale. Againe, the Nurse, besides a sufficient quantity for the nourishing of the childe, must have some te milke into his eyes; if he should chance to have any imperfection there: as either heat, pimples, or itching, that so it may be cooled.

The colour of good Milke.

As for the colour, it must be white, according to the common saying; (*As white as Milke*) for the Milke which is blewish, makes shew of Melancholly, as the yellow doth of Choller, and the reddish, that it is not well concocted, and signifies either that there is a weaknesse in the breasts, or else an ill quality of the blood whereof it is made, which hath not bene concocted and corrected by the natural heat of the paps.

The smell.

Besides, good Milke ought not to have any strong smell, but rather a sweet sent, which smelleth neither hot, nor sowre, nor yet adust, for such smells shew, that the blood of which it is made is overheated, or putride.

The taste.

And concerning the taste; that Milke which hath a sweet savour, is much commended: as contrariwise, that which is either sharpe, sowre, or birter, is to be refused, and therefore not chosen for good.

A prooffe of the goodnesse of Milke in quantitie.

Now the triall thereof may be made in this sort: as to know whether it be of a good substance: let the



the Nurse milke some few drops of it upon a looking glasse, or other sleeke thing: and if in holding it gently aside, it flows and runs presently, and keepe not together a little, then it is a signe that the Milke is watrish, and too thinne: If it stand still, and will not runne at all, then it shewes that the milke is too thicke and fat: But if it runne leasurely, not staving either too long, or flowing too soone upon the said smooth body, it sheweth that the Milke is of a middle substance, and ought to be reckoned and chosen for the best.

The quantity of the Milke may be knowne thus; A triall of the quantity. if there remaine some in the breast after the childe hath done sucking: and againe, if in opening the childe you find him bepissed: But you must have an eye that your Nurse be none of these Cozeners, (for there be some) that give the child water to drinke in secret, and others which wet the childs bed: But such Nurses deserve to be whipt, and their knavery may bee easily descried, both by the eye and the sent, and likewise discerned by the taste.

Now the observation which is taken from the Nurses child, for the choice of a fit Nurse, is concerning his age: For if her childe bee above seven or eight moneths old, then her milke will be too stale afterwards: and besides, it would be a doubt whether shee would have milke enough to nurse him that should be put unto her. The choice of a Nurse by her childe.

Againe, if the childe bee but fifteene dayes or a moneth old, that shewes that her Milke is too new, and that it is not as yet well purified:

because the mother is not wholly purged and cleansed.

*Avicen.* So *Avicen* commands, that a childe should not be put to sucke a Woman, till at least two moneths after her delivery; and at the farthest not after eight.

And because the sex of the Nurfses childe must likewise bee observed, *Aegineta* wisheth, that it should be rather a man-child than a maid-child: because the milke is hotter, better, concocted, and not so excrementitious: And he addeth farther, that it is fit (whether it be a boy or a wench) that the mother have born her burthen the full time. For those that are commonly delivered before their time, for the most part are not sound, but sickly: though there be many healthfull women which goe with their children but seven moneths.

## CHAP. II.

*How a Nurse ought to order her selfe concerning her Diet, and manner of life.*



IT is not enough that a Nurse be indow- ed with the conditions and qualities aforesaid: but it is very fit also that she maintaine and preserve them: where- fore wee will set downe briefly, how, and in what manner she ought to governe her selfe.

First of all therefore let her shun and avoid all bad aire, and all kinde of ill and stinking smells: for such

such sents as are too strong, are naught and hurtfull for her, because they infect and over heat the spirits, and bloud, whereof the milke is made: Shee must likewise avoid all meates, that are either too much salted, or spiced, or of a strong taste, as Onions, Leekes, Garlicke, Mustard, and all kind of Baked Meates, and old cheese: Let her eate Veale, Mutton, Chicken, Kid, Partridge, and such like meates which are of good iuyce, and of easie digestion: and shee must use them in moderate sort, without glutting herselfe.

What meat a nurse must refrain from.

What meates she shall use.

All sorts of fish are hurtfull for her, except it bee in small quantity: shee may eat, Iacke, Sole, and Qualver, and if she eate no fish, let her use new laid egges.

Her meat must bee rather boyled, than roasted, but yet there must be had a respect to the habitude and complexion of the child: For if shee bee very moist and flegmaticke, then the Nurse shall rather use rostmeat: and so of other complexions.

Her bread shall bee of good wheate, well made, light, and baked as it ought to be.

Her Bread.

Let her put into her pottages, Lettuce, Sorrell, Parcelaine, Borage, Buglosse, and Succory.

Her Broth.

Shee shall refraine from all kinde of raw fruits.

For her drinke, let her take Ale, or Beere; and where that cannot bee had, Barly water; or water sodden; or else a small kind of Hydromell or mead which hath but a little Cinamon in it.

Her drinke.  
A kinde of drinke which they use in France which they call Bouchet.

But I would rather counsaile them, to drinke Wine and Water together. *Aristotle* forbids wine, both

*Aristotle*.

both to the Nurse and the childe, except it bee (as they say) well Christned.

Her exercise.

She must use moderate exercise, and chiefly before meales : For moderate exercise doth strengthen the naturall heat, and consumeth all superfluties. The parts which ought to be most exercised, should be rather the uppermost, as the shoulders and armes : because that the exercising of them makes the bloud and spirits the sooner ascend into the breasts.

Her sleepe.

For her sleepe, that cannot be either limited or prescribed : because the Nurse is oftentimes constrained to watch, when the child is either froward or sicke. And therefore she must take her rest when she may, whether it be in the day, or in the night, as the child will give her leave.

Her belly must be alwaies loose, and if it chance to be bound, shee may take a Clyster. Let her use Broths, Prunes, and Apples well sodden, that so she may keepe her selfe soluble.

She must shun all disquietnesse of mind, and she must bee merry and pleasant, neither vexing, nor grieving, nor too cholericke.

### CHAP. III.

*The care which a Nurse must have of all the parts of the child's body.*

**T**HE Nurse should be chosen a moneth or two before the woman bee delivered, that shee may alwaies have an eye over her and her child,

# of Children

child, and then as soone as the Woman shall be brought abed, and that the child hath passed thorow the hands of the Midwife or Keeper, and is swathed by them, he shall be delivered to the Nurse to give him sucke, and have a care of him.

any child  
brought

First of all, let the Nurse consider and view all the parts of the childs body, beginning at the head, observing whether it be well fashioned or no, that if it chance to have any ill forme or figure, that then it may be mended as well as it may, which shall be done by bringing the said head, unto the forme of a bowle, a little pressed and made flat on both sides, in such sort, that neither the fore part nor hinder part of the head stand too farre out, nor yet be too flat: which shall be done with such head-cloths as they use commonly to weare, stroking it by little and little, without much pressing or crumpling it, as some Nurses doe: but onely handling it in a milde and gentle fashion.

How to fashion  
the childs head.

Upon the Mould of the head you shall lay a peece of Cotton or Kersey, if you use so lay a peece of Scarlet.

Sum  
Shon  
all  
Larks  
of

The eares must bee cleansed with litle ragges, made like tents, and the Nurse must look whether she holes be well made, that there may not remaine any filth either within or in the wrinkles and folds behind them. And as *Rhazes* saith, the eares must be a little pressed to the head, that they may not hang downe.

The childs  
eares must bee  
cleansed.

Let the eares also bee wrapped about with fine linnen clouts, that they may not bee over-heated,

M m and

## The Nursing

and so stick to the head, by the meanes of some grosse matter or sweat which commonly is bred there.

The eyes  
cleansed.

But above all, the eyes must be looked unto, and wiped with a fine linnen cloth, especially about both the corners, that if there should chance to be any filth gathered in those places, it may be taken away. *Avice* puts thereto a little Virgin oyle, because it mitigateth and taketh away the roughnesse and bitrosity which might remaine about the childs eyes, through his long swimming and lying in his owne sweat and Urine, while he was in his mothers wombe. I have seene in some children, that (after they have beene borne) there hath runne out of the corner of the eye, many daies together, thick drops of blond, which congealed presently. There are many children likewise borne bleare eyed, for the helping whereof, the Nurse shall use to annoint the corners of the eyes with a little *Pugentum Tutie*, and likewise spit a little of her milke into them.

The nose must  
be cleansed.

Now concerning the childs Nose, it is fit that it should be opened and dilated gently, washing and cleansing it with a little warme water. The same *Avice* bids, that it should bee anointed with a little Virgin oyle, which must bee done with the top of one finger, the nailes being pared very neare and even. And if you chance to finde some little membrane or skinne that stops up the holes, and passage thereof, it shall be cut asunder that there may bee a passage for the excrements of the braine.

And

And for as much as the head of a childe aboundeth with store of moisture, (as *Galen* writeth) which is purged and voided by the mouth, nose, and other passages: therefore it will be very fit that the Nurse have a care to the taking of them away for feare lest by their stay, they either fall down upon the lungs, or into the stomacke, or else grow to be dried, which hapning the Nurse must put her finger being annointed with honey, to the bottom of the childs mouth, and rub it above and under the tongue, which shee may doe also with Sirup of Violets.

For the cleansing of the mouth.

Besides shee shall looke whether the fundament bee well opened, and whether there bee any filth bred there or no: as also, whether the passage of the yard be free: & if it be a wench, whether there be any membrane that doth stop up the entrance: Not long since, I made a new passage in a little childe, who had the hole of his yard growne, and as it were glued together: and an other boy, which had the string of his yard so short and straight, that it made the head of it (called *Balanus*) bow downward, and seemed as though it had no passage, but as soone as I had cut the string, the yard came to the right fashion.

Care to be had of the fundament.

And concerning the membrane which sometimes stops the passage: I have made incision of the like membrans, in three girls, and lately in the daughter of *M. James Boyzard*.

As for the armes and legges, if they bee either crooked or stand awry, they must bee set straight

For the armes and legs.

M m 2

with

# The Nursing

with the swatche of the shoulders, made for the purpose: as likewise is either the backe bone, or the belly do stand out. But for these they must repaire unto a Chirurgion: who must shew and instruct the Nurse how she ought to proceed therein, when she swatches the child.

A precept of  
Galen, de febri-  
tat. suenda...

Gal. de arte  
medica.

*Galen* would have us, to looke to these deformities betimes, because the bones (through their softness and tendernes) are more easily made straight and reapt to be set in their right place & forme, then when they are growne dryer: it being then very hard to amend such errors, as the same *Galen* saith.

...this was seed and ...  
...  
... **GWAP. IV.** ...

... *How the Nurse must swatch the child.* ...



It must not onely have a regard, to such defects of Nature, as the child may bring with him from his mothers wombe, and cure them: but we must also looke, and have an eye, that the Nurse, or shee that swatches, and dresseth him, doe not make him worse: and of a well fashioned child, in all the parts of his body, doe not make him deformed or mishapen, and so spoile him. For in swathing the child, most commonly they bind and crush him so hard, that they make him grow crooked. Some swath all the childs body hard to make him have a goodly necke, and to make him

seeme



seeme the fatter : but this crushing makes his brest and the ribs which are fastned to the back-bone, to stand out ; so that they are bended, and draw the *Vertebra* to them, which makes the back-bone to bend, and give out either inwardly or outwardly, or else on the one side, and that causeth the childe to be either crump-shouldred, or crooked brested, or else to have one of his shoulders stand farther out than the other, some also bind the hips so hard that they become very small, and that hinders them from growing and waxing big. Which doth much harme especially to maids, who should have large hips, that when they come to age they may bring forth goodly children.

Inconvenience  
of hard swa-  
thing the hips.

*Galen* hath observed, that the too strait and hard binding or crushing of the hams and legges of little children when they are swathed, doth make them grow crooked legged, and they will remaine as the Latines call it, *Vari*, or *Valgi*, going either inward or outward with their knees. This imperfection may also happen through the Nurses fault, by carrying the childe alwayes upon one arme, and the same side: and by holding the childs knees hard towards her, making them stand like a bow : For the preventing of which mischances, the Nurses shall carry their children sometimes on the right side, and sometimes on the left. And they must likewise swath them but loosely, stretching downe their armes all along their sides, without binding or crushing them hard together.

*Gal. de caus.  
morbor.*

## CHAP. V.

*Of the childs cradle, and how it is to be placed; and  
also how the child ought to be laid  
when he goes to sleepe.*



When the child shall be thus dressed and swathed, it will then bee fit to let him sleepe and take some rest, for which purpose he must be laid in his cradle: fitted with a little mattresse, which shall be laid deepe to the bottome, that the sides of the cradle may bee a great deale above the mattresse; that so the child may as it were sincke downe in his cradle for feare least he fall out of it. Then upon the Mattresse shall be laida pillow, that is somewhat soft, to lay the child upon, letting him lye the first month upon his back but afterwards when he is waxed a little bigger, let him lye sometimes on his right side, and sometimes on the left, having his head a little raised up, that the excrements of his braine may the more easily flow and passe through the emunctories thereof: And he must be bound & tyed in with strings, lest in rocking him, hee fall out of his Cradle. At the head of the Cradle let there be a little Arch made of wood, or Ozier to lay a coverlet over it, thereby to keepe away the wind, and that no dust fall upon him. But it would be more convenient (for those that can fitly have it) to set the cradle within a little bed,

How to order  
the Cradle.

How to lay the  
child.

bed, the Curtaines drawne round about it.

Now concerning the place where the Cradle The place where the Cradle shall be set. must stand, it will be very fit that it be in a Chamber that is neither too light nor too darke, nor too

hot, nor too cold: For if it be too light, it spends the spirits of the sight, and hindreth the child from sleeping: if it be too darke, it makes him desire the light, and causes him to be Melancholike: if it bee too hot, it will stifle him, & make him apt to catch cold when he comes into the aire: if it be too cold, it brings him to a murre, or stopping in the head: and therefore it will be best to keepe a meane in all of them: And especially you must have a care that the Cradle and bed stand not neare the doore, chimney, or windowes, that the light doe not draw the childs sight awry, and so make him prove to be squint eyed: and therefore the fire or the candle must be set right against his eyes: For if they were on either side, the glimpse will make the child turn and role his eye aside to follow the light, and so the use and motion which the muscles would get thereby, may make him either squint or goggle-eyed.

Oftentimes the child cannot sleepe after he is laid downe, and therefore he must be gently rocked, to invite him thereto, and not hastily or too fast, for feare of making the milke flore in his stomack, and his Nurse shall sing by him, because singing provokes sleepe, and keepes him from crying.

Till the childe be two yeare old, hee may sleepe at all times whensoever he will, yea, he may fall a sleepe at his mothers teat as hee is sucking; and if you

you would observe the space of time for sleeping which the Ancients did, it must be thus: Till the childe be three or foure yeares old, let him sleepe more than wake. But according to *Galen*, he ought herein not to exceed mediocrity, otherwise it is dangerous: for long sleeping copleth and moistneth the braine, and there retaines superfluities. And *Avicen* saith, that it doth betumme and befot the childs senses, and makes him dull and lumpish.

CHAPTER VII.

*When the Mother her selfe, or the Nurse, ought to give the childe sucke, and how, and how much.*

**I**T is very fit, that either the Mother, or some other Nurse for her, do give the child sucke after he is borne: if it be the Mother her selfe, it must not be at the soonest, untill eight dayes after her delivery: Some also are of opinion, that the Mother her selfe should not give her childe sucke in the moneth, by reason she hath been troubled and tired in her lying in: and because she is not as yet well cleansed and purified of her after-purgings, which commonly last a moneth, as *Hippocrates* saith: In which space she shall let little pretty whelps sucke her breasts, to make her milke come the better, and that it goe not away.

Some women doe make their keepers draw their breasts, and others draw them with glasses themselves:

selfes : Besides, *Avicen* commands that a woman should not give her childe sucke, untill she be well recovered. Now you know that some are well sooner, and some later, and so there can be no time limited and prescribed: But above all, it must be observed (as the same Authour saith) that the Nurse doe not give the child sucke after shee is risen, before she hath milked forth some of her milke : And likewise shee shall not give him the breast, if by chance shee hath over-heated her selfe; either by some exercise, or else with going, till first shee become into a good temper, and well cooled.

Now in giving him sucke, she shall observe this order : She must sometimes spirt some of her milk, either upon the child's lips, or else into his mouth; and when he hath left the nipple, shee must crush her breast a little, that he may draw and sucke with lesse labour; and she must be carefull that he swallow not downe too much at a time, and that the milke come not out againe at the nose : Besides, she must sometimes take away the teat, and give it him againe, that hee sucke not too much at once, and too greedily.

It is very hard to set downe the quantity of milke that a childe should take ; But therein the Nurse must have a respect to the age, complexion, temper, and to the desire which the childe hath to sucke, increasing it as the childe groweth, or according as he is thirsty, either through some sicknesse, or when his teeth come forth : for at those times he is more drie than otherwise. Now to know how

The manner  
how to give the  
childe sucke.

What quantity  
of milke the  
child may  
sucke.

often the child should sucke in a day: *Paulus Aegineta* appoints, that it should be twice a day, or thrise at the most: which he meaneth for the first foure, or five dayes, that he may be acquainted therewith by little and little, & also because there is then no great need. I have seene children that have not sucked in two or three daies, after they were borne; for they know not then, whether they are yet in their Mothers belly, or no, where they sucked not at all; although that *Hippocrates* saith, that the child receives some nourishment by the mouth, while he is in his Mothers belly. It can neither bee told nor limited how often he ought to sucke in a day; because it is fit he should have the teat, as often as he cryeth: yet let it be but a little at a time, because the stomacke at first is but weak. And if he wrangles but a little, it will bee best to still him, either with rocking, or singing: And though he be not quieted, or stilled; a little crying can doe him no great harme, but rather may serve for some good use: For it makes him run at Nose, shed teares, and spit: it purgeth his braine, yea, and stirreth up his natural heat, and also dilates the passages of the breast. But if he cry too violently, and eagerly, it may do him much harme & cause him to be bursten, or break some vessell in his breast, or else bring the head-ach.

*Hippocrat. lib. de  
Prinsip.*

## CHAP. VII.

*How the childe must be made cleane after he is  
awake, and unswathed.*



After the childe hath well sucked, and slept, the Nurse must shift him, and make him cleane: For which purpose the Nurse, or some other, must sit neare the fire, laying out her legges at length, having a soft pillow in her lap, the doors and windowes being close shut, and having something about her that may keepe the wind from the child. And when shee is thus accommodated, she shall unswath and shift him dry. If hee bee very foule, shee may wash him with a little water and wine luke-warme, with a sponge or linnen cloth.

The time of shifting him is commonly about seven a clocke in the morning, then againe at noone, and at seven a clocke at night: and it would not be amisse to change him againe about mid-night, which is not commonly done. But because there is no certaine houre, either of the childs sucking, or sleeping: therefore divers, after hee hath slept a good while do every time shift him; lest he should foule and bespise himselfe. And surely there be many children, that had need to be shifted, as soone as they have fouled themselves: which I would counsell you to doe, and not to let them lie in their filth.

## The Nursing

When you change his bed, you shall rub all his body over with an indifferent fine linnen cloth: and then his head must be rub'd and made cleane: and when he is foure or five moneths old, his head may be cleansed with a fine brush: and when hee is growne bigger, let it be combed.

### CHAP. VIII.

*What cloaths and coats the childe must have, and at what time.*



AS soone as the childe is somewhat growne, and that hee cannot well keepe his hands swathed in, and hid any longer, (which is commonly about the twentieth or thirtieth day, according as he is in strength) then must hee have little sleeves, that having his armes and hands at liberty, hee may use and stirre them: and then the Nurse shall begin to carry him abroad, so that it be faire weather, to sport and exercise him, not carrying him out into the raine, or into the hot Sunne, nor when there is any rough wind.

And therefore he must be kept in the shade, avoiding all ill aires, as of finks, and the like: And if hee should chauce to be frighted with any thing, the Nurse shall endeavor to take away the apprehension therof, and hearten him, without making him afraid. I have seene some children, that with a fright have fallen into the *Epilepsie*, or falling sicknesse, the

Physicians



Physicians not being able to give any other reason thereof, but onely the feare he had taken.

If by chance he doth cry and weepe, then shall you endeavour by all meanes to still him, and not let him cry, observing diligently what it is he cries for, and what may be the cause thereof: that as *Galen* saith, he may have that he desireth, or else bee rid of that which offends and troubleth him.

But the same Author saith, that children generally are stilled and quieted by three meanes: by giving them the breast, by rocking and by singing to them: They may be also stilled by giving them something to hold in their hand; or by making them looke upon somewhat that pleaseth them, as also by carrying them abroad.

About the eighth or ninth moneth, or at farthest when the childe is a yeare old, he must have coats, and not be kept swathed any longer. And if it be in Summer, he must be coated sooner because of the heat, which makes the body often times to be full of wheales and pimples. And some may have coats sooner, according as their strength will suffer it; of which an especial care must bee had. And chiefly the Nurse must let him have a hat, that may be easie and large enough, which may cover all the forepart of the head, without being curious (as they say commonly) to make him have a goodly high fore-head.



this is but once or twice a day, and that to, when he is almost ready to bee weaned (as *Rhase* saith.) And this also doth serve to whet and rub his gums which about that time begin to itch. And when he is fifteene moneths old, or a little more, then may you give him the flesh of a Capon, or of Partridge minced and mingled with some broth, made either of Veale, Mutton, or Chicken, adding thereto some sops of bread. For the Ancient writers forbid, that we should give them any store of meat, before they are two yeares old: because they are not able to chew, and digest it, and also for that they have not so much need of nourishment. And therefore you must stay till you have weaned him, before you feed him more plentifully.

CHAP. X.

*Whether children ought to be weaned.*



It is a very hard thing to set downe a certaine time, when a child ought to be weaned; Notwithstanding if wee will beleeeve *Pantus Agineta*, and *Athen*, hee must bee weaned, when hee is two yeares old, and hath all his teerh come forth. Now in some they come forth sooner, and in others later: and to weane him before they are come forth, might be an occasion, to make him have many diseases.

Wherefore to know certainly when a child should

should bee weaned, and that he should wholly feed upon other meat, it must first be observed, whether he take his meat well; and if he be able to chew it thorowly: whether he be sickly; or else strong and lusty.

Concerning the time and season of the yeare, it must be when the weather is neither too hot, nor too cold: and therefore the fittest time will be the spring or in Autumn. But sometimes there is necessity to weane him at another time, yea and before two yeares, by reason that his nurse may chance to be sickly and that he being come to some knowledge will not sucke another. It may also happen that the child is to be weaned before he be two yeares old, for that the milke (although otherwise it bee good) doth curdle & grow sower in his stomacke, which requireth stronger meate.

Now to weane a childe well, let them observe this method following: First the teat shall not bee wholly taken from him, but hee shall sucke a litle, and eat a litle meat; and so continue for a few daies; then afterwards hee shall not sucke in the day time, though in the night, they may give him a litle. Neverthelisse, it will be very fit in the morning, when he is awake and hath beene shifted and dressed, to give him sucke a litle, and then to let him stay two or three houres before hee take any thing, afterward to give him somewhat to dinner, as some pottage, or panade, with a litle flesh minced, or cut very small, and then let him stay two houres without giving him any thing, at which time you may

may give him a little sucke, and lay him to sleepe: And when hee is wakened, and hath bene made cleane, then the Nurse shall carry him abroad into the aire, if it be faire weather, and give him sucke, and then lay him to sleepe againe, without letting him eat any solide meat, or very little. At his dinner they shall give him to drinke a little boyted water: and this order shall be kept a whole moneth, and when hee shall bee accustomed to eat solide meat, then the teat shall bee quite taken from him.

That is in France, where they have no Ale or beere.

It happens oftentimes that the child will not forsake the breast, but still cryeth, and is very eager after it, and then you must make him loath it, anointing the Nurses breast with Mustard, or else rubbing the top of the nipple with a little Aloes, and likewise make him afraid of it.

CHAP. XI.

*Of the diseases which happen to a child.*

**H**itherto wee have shewed what manner of Woman a Nurse ought to be, and how shee should Nurse and give her childe sucke: it now resteth that wee speake of some diseases, which happen unto children in their first age, which is from their birth, to the seventh moneth, in which time they commonly have their first teeth, then afterwards those which happen in their second age

00

which

which is from the seventh month, to the end of two yeares, at which time they commonly are weaned, and their teeth are almost quite come forth: leaving the third age, which is from two yeares to seven, and the fourth also, which is reckoned from seven yeares to fourteene.

Hippocr. lib. 3.

Aphor. 24.

lib. 3. Aphor. 25.

Hippocrates hath observed in his *Aphorismes*, that children when they are young, are subject to these diseases, to a soreness of the mouth, with little wheals which do rise thereon, and upon the tongue, called by him *Aphtha*, to Vomiting, the Cough, weeping, or forsaking of sleep, inflammation of the Nostrils, and moisture of the eyes. And in their second age, (which is when their teeth beginne to come)

lib. 3. Aphor. 25.

they are troubled with itching of the gums, and chiefly when the dogge-teeth come forth, and those are most troubled therewithall, which are more fat and fleshy, and which are bound in their belly. But because there are many other diseases that they are subject unto, whether it be that they bring them from their mothers wombe with them, or that they happen to them afterwards: therefore I will briefly speake of them all, beginning first with those that do most trouble them.

lib. 3. Aphor. 25.

lib. 3. Aphor. 25.

lib. 3. Aphor. 25.

Into the world. Some receiving bruises, and hurts either in the head or other parts of their body, through striving and straining in the delivery; as Aches, or breaking of an arme, leg or thigh: which I have often seene in a difficult travaile. The latter must be helped by setting the bones againe in their right place, whether it be that they were out of ioynt, or else broken, and then bind them, and keep them so till they be well grown together, and have taken firme hold.

As for hurts and bruises, they must be bathed with some fomentation, made of Roses, Mellor, & Chamomil flowers, and then annointed with Saint Johns Wort and Roses, mingled together.

*Mad. Mabu* was delivered of a childe so bruised and torne, that every one judged him to bee dead, he was so blacke: whom I dressed and looked unto, & with the foresaid medicine I healed him perfectly. But the worst is, when there happeneth any hart about the childs head, by means whereof, there comes some great swelling tumor, full of blood, which may be taken improperly for the *Hydrocephala*. If it be but small, then it may be resolved with the former fomentation and liniment and some plasters of *Diacalctos*, and *Diachilos Treasura* mingled together. But if the swelling be much and big, then must we not thinke to heale it by resolution as *M. Pietra*, and I my selfe saw a Chirurgion who was very confident, and did assure himselfe, to make it resolve onely with new wax spread and laid upon it. But in the end we were constrain-

## The Nursing

ned to lance the humour, and in few daies, it was perfectly healed under my hands.

CHAPTER XIII. Of the greatnesse and swelling of the head,

which happens to little Children.



**I**T chanceth oftentimes, that the childs head after hee is born, is bigger then naturally it ought to bee; an accident which is very dangerous, and hard to be cured, whereof there be three kinds.

The first is called of the Greekes, *Macrocephalos* which is, when the head is bigger: than naturally it should be; and yet this cometh naturally, as when the bones of the head be large, and of great compasse containing great store of braine, and proportioned to the compasse and circuit of them; there being neither wind, nor waters, nor any other humors, that are the cause thereof, Nature having thus proportioned it: and it is so heavy and unwildy, that the child cannot hold it upright, his necke being constrained to bow under it, with the very waighr, so that it had need to bee propt up with something or other: Now there is contrary to this another which is called *Microcephalos* that is a little head, such a one had *Thersites* the Grecian and one *Triboulet* who was a French man. Both these accidents



dents are very hard to be cured, yea almost impossible.

The second kind is called *Hydrocephalus*, which is, when the head becomes big, by reason of some waters therein contained. Of the which there are divers sorts: for either the waters are contained betweene the skin, and the *Pericranium*; or betwixt the *Pericranium* and the bone; or betweene the bone and the membranes, called *Dura mater*, and *Pia mater*: Some of them are particular, and possess but onely one part of the head; others are generall and affect it wholly.

Some of them have their spring and beginning, even from the mothers wombe: which hapneth when the mother, while shee was with childe, through an ill Diet, gathered store of crudities and raw humours, whereof there is bred a watrish and flegmatike blood, with the which the child being fed, and not being able to digest, or consume it, much lesse to evacuate and void it by the passages appointed by nature, the watrish matter gathers it selfe together in the head. The Cause.

It may also proceed from the child, being not wel purg'd of the superfluities which are gathered in his braine, and diffused over all the head, or part thereof: whereunto we may adde the ill nourishment which the child receiveth from his Nurse, whose milke is either ferous and watrish, or overheated, which causeth divers vapours to ascend up into the braine, which are there converted into watrish humors.

The third kind is called *Hydrocephalus*, when there chanceth to be a winde, which runneth betweene the skinne of the head, and the bone; and also betweene the skull, and *Dura mater*; which causeth the head to be so swolne, and puff up, (as *Aretius* saith) that there have beene divers children which have dyed of it; the bones of the head being very much thrust outward, which is very painfull: And certainly, there is nothing that causeth greater distention, or more paine, then when there is some wind inclosed, in what part soever it bee of the body.

The watric swelling hath almost the like causes, by reason of some watrish matter, that is bred in the braine, which through the weaknesse of the naturall heat, cannot well be dispersed, and so it is turned into wind: or else through some vapours, which arise from the neather parts, which doe also distend, and stretch out the parts of the head.

They are all of them different one from another: for the *Macracephalus*, or great headed, yeelds not any impression when it is crushed; because it is the bones which make it so big and swolne: but in the watrish swelling the finger enters easily, and leaves an impression as an *Oedema* doth: But if you presse the windy swelling, it leaves no marke, or print, but presently it riseth up againe like a foot-ball.

Now, to know whether the water be contained betwixt the bones of the head, and the membranes of the braine: it may easily bee discerned by the paine, and by the accidents: as if there happen any

Ver-

Vertigo, or Epilepsie, to the childe, and that he sleepe little, or not at all; as also his continuall crying doth witness it.

The cure of the windie swelling shall be performed, by appointing the Nurse to keepe a good Diet, using meats that shall neither breed wind nor crudities.

The cure of *Plisucephalus*.

Concerning outward Medicines, it is good to use Fomentations; for such kind of Medicines surely may doe him very much good, if the wind be contained betweene the skinne and *Perivascum*, or betwixt the *Perieroneum* and the skull. But if the said wind be inclosed betwixt the skull and *dura mater*, it will be a very difficult disease to be cured, (except the wind be but in small quantity.) The Fomentation is this:

Outward Medicines.

℞. Fol. *Sala. Betavia. Agrimon. Columbith. Origan. an. m. j. sem. Anys. Fenicul. an. ʒ ij. flor. Chamemel. Melilot. Rosar. rubr. an. m. j. Coquantur in aqua communi, addenda Vini prun, fiat fofus.*

A Fomentation

And with this Fomentation warme, you shall bathe all his head with fine sponges, and then apply this Plaister afterwards.

An Emplaister

℞. Ol. *stact. Amygdol. amar. an. ʒ ij. Ol. Chamaemel. ʒ j. B. Rocas. Lauri. Beniper. an. ʒ ij. sem. Anys. Fenicul. an. ʒ ij. B. Vini. alb. Vit. j. Bulliant omnia simul ad visum sumpt. passivum adde Taxelinth. recent. ʒ B. Cere. q. s. ut inde fiat Emplastrum extensibile. peris. ad usum capiti.*

An Emplaister

As

Hydrocephalus.

As for the waterish swelling, according to the quantity and quality of the humour which makes it, and the place wherein the said humour is contained, it will be either easie or hard to be cured: for if the humour be thinne, and in small quantity, and that it be contained betweene the skin and the *Pericraneum*, or else betweene the *Pericraneum* and the skull, or betweene the membranes of the skull; then *Avicen* makes a doubt whether it can be cured.

But if it be curable, the best way will bee to use the Fomentations and Plaisters following: which have power to digest and dry up the said waterishnesse.

A Fomentation

Re. *Fol. Absinth. Puleg. Serpil. Betonic. an. m. j. Rosar. rub. flor. Stæchad. an. pug. j. Nucem Cupress. Balsustior. Irid. florent. an. ʒ ij. Coquantur perfecte in liquor ciner. sarment. & cantinum fiat fomentum cum spongia.*

After the Fomentation, shall bee applied this Emplaister.

An Emplaister.

Re. *Pul. Betonic. Salui. Absinth. an. ʒ ij. Ol. Chamam. Rosar. an. ʒ ij. ung. Comitiff. ʒ j. Cera q. s. fiat Emplastrum.*

You must likewise apply the *Magistral Emplaister de Betonicis*. Some take Snailes, shels and all, and beat them, putting unto them a little powder of Betonie, and of the roots of Ireos.

And if these Medicines profit not, as indeed it is very hard they should: then must you determine to open it.

The

The ancient Writers, as *Rhys*, makes no question to apply thereto some gentle Caustery, others do rather counsaile, that it should bee opened with a lancet: For mine owne part, I have practized both waies, without any ill accident, when that the waters have bene contained betweene the skin, and the *Pericranium*, or betweene the *Pericranium* and the skull: But to say the truth, when the water is betweene the bones, and the membranes of the braine, though my selfe I have bene very carefull in dressing of it: and not long since, being ioyned with *Mess. Pierre*, a sworne Chirurgion of Paris, yet the successe hath not bene according as we desired; And therefore, the cure of it must not be taken in hand, but with foretelling of the danger.

CHAP. XIV.

*Other imperfections, that accompany the Child; when hee is borne: as excrescences of flesh, the roofe of the mouth cleft, a harelip, and supernumerary fingers.*



See many times, that the Child brings with him into the world divers other imperfections, & effects As I saw a childe of one *Peter Ferof* who had a little piece of flesh, which hung in the midst of his chin, like unto a little sausage of the bignesse of a quill, and

Pp

halfe

halfe as long: and I tied it about with a thread, and cured it quickly. I did the like also another time, being accompanied with *Mons. Portall*, to a sonne of *Mons. de Saint Gille*, who had as it were a little *Cherrie* hanging at the end of his eare.

The rooffe of  
the mouth  
cleft.

I have seene three little children newly borne, (and among the rest, I saw one, being with *Mons. Hautin*, of Paris, ordinary Physitian to the King, who was the sonne of *Mons. de Chery*;) all these three children had the rooffe of their mouth cleft and divided, even to the bottome of the Nose; by meanes whereof they could not sucke: because it is necessary for one that will sucke well, to have the aire closed in the mouth, and not to be dissipated and lost, which a child that hath a cleft Pallet cannot do; because the aire doth spread it selfe abroad, and gets out by the Pallet of the mouth and the Nose. Nevertheless, I have seene little children that have beene nourished by a sucking bottle, the space of two or three moneths: but at length they have died; because the milke ran out by the Nose, it being a very hard thing to make an artificiall Pallet, that should keepe it from going forth: Nevertheless I would counsell the Chirurgeon to make one, and to fit it with a little sponge tied to it, which shall be put handsonely into the said cleft with the Pallet: and it must be put in when the child would sucke, and then taken out againe when he hath done. And this have I practised with good successe.

The Hare-lip.

The cleft Lip, called a Hare-lip, doth often happen

happen unto children : but the cheifest point is, to know whether it should be cured betimes, or else stay longer before it be taken in hand. I was once present at a consultation, for a great Lords sake, who was brought hither from beyond the Sea, for me to take him in hand, and cure him : Six Physicians and Chirurgions were of opinion, that the cure should be deferred longer, (because the child was not above foure or five moneths old.) Notwithstanding it was put in practice contrary to their opinion, but the childs life was endangered thereby : And to say the truth, it is fitter to prolong and deferre the practice of it, untill the childe have some more discretion : for otherwise there is danger lest the points of the needles bee broken, either by the childs crying or sucking, or else in rubbing himselfe : as I have knowne it happen unto some, their flesh being very soft and tender : Besides, the operation is hard to be done, by reason of the childs impasience, having no discretion or knowledge, (the which hapned to the foresaid Lord :) And also, for that it growes not a whit the worle for the deferring it, till the childe have more understanding and judgement.

A History.

If the childe should have a finger or a toe above the ordinary number, as there be some which have six, whether it be in the hand, or on the feet : this deformity-hapning, I thinke it best that it be taken away, as soone as the childe is growne any thing big : Which I have done to an honest Gentlewomans sonne, who had two thumbs, which came

Extraordinary number of fingers.

A Story.

unto him, as his mother told me, by marking and beholding earnestly her Vintager, who had two thumbs, as he told money into her hand when she reckoned with him, whereat she tooke an exceeding pleasure and delight, to see him wagge the said thumbs in that manner.

## CHAP. XV.

*Of the diseases which happen in the Eyes, Eares, and Nose of little children.*



Most commonly little children when they are newly borne, are subject to divers diseases, which chance in their Eyes, Eares, Nose, Mouth, Navell, and other parts of their bodies, as we will shew hereafter in briefe.

*Of the diseases of the eyes.*

Concerning those that happen in their eyes; I referre the young Chirurgion to my Booke of the diseases of the eyes, which I wrote on that subject. But because that for the most part they are troubled with watering and bloud-shot eyes, it will not be amisse in this case, that the Nurse sprinkle him some of her milke, to make him open his eyes, and take away the gumme that holdeth them together. Shee may likewise wash them with a little Rose water, and Plantaine water warmed, and shall anoint the lids and corners of his eyes morning and Evening, with a little *Vnguentum Talcis* well made and prepared; for this ointment hath power through his



his oyle effe: to keep the eyelids from sticking and  
gluing together, to strengthen them, and take  
away any inflammation that may happen there.

Of the Nose.

Oftentimes the Nose of little children is stop-  
ped with filth and matter which is dried, that they  
can scarcely fetch breath thereby. This accident  
doth much trouble them, especially when they  
sneeze, and it makes them oftentimes swallow their  
spittle and breath with paine: when this chanceth,  
the Nurse must moisten the inside of the Nose  
with fine soft linnen rents, rubbed over with some  
*Vnguentum Rosatum*, or *Pomatum*, or for want of these  
she shall take a little of the seething of the pot, and  
make him snift it up into his Nose (if he have dis-  
cretion to doe it.)

Of the Eares.

Likewise the eares of little children do commonly  
runne, as well within as without, which hap-  
neth because naturally their braine is very moist,  
and besides, there arise many vapours from the in-  
trailes into the head, which fills their braine with  
moisture and that runnes and flowes by the eares,  
and therefore the Nurse must have a care to keepe  
cleane the childseares, as well within, as without  
and behinde them, dropping into them gently  
now and then, two or three drops of oyle of bitter  
Almonds, with a little Honey of Roses, a little  
warmed. And if there be any fretting or excoriati-  
on behind & about the eares: then the Nurse shall  
lay on them handsomely, fine linnen Plaisters hand-  
somerly, fine little Plaisters, made with an ointment  
composed of white wax, and Oyle of Nuts.

Towards the hinder part of the eares about the bottome of them, there happens oftentimes swellings, which the ancients call *Parotides*, and the French *Oryllou*: when these happen, they must be rubbed with oyle of sweet Almonds, laying upon it a little quilt made of carden Correh, or fattie woole, basted betweene fine linnen clothes:

And the better to resolve the said swelling, you may adde to it a little oyle of Camomile and Lillies: If these swellings come to suppuration, they must be dressed as other impostumes be, not using thereto any repercussive Medicines.

CHAP. XVI. Of the sores and ulcers which happen in the child's mouth, called Aphthe.

Of the sores and ulcers which happen in the child's mouth, called Aphthe.



Most commonly, in the mouths of children there arise little pustules & ulcers, which possesse not onely the sides of the mouth, the tongue, and the gums; but even the very Almonds, & Pallet of the mouth, and they were called of the Ancients *Aphthe*. Of these ulcers there bee some that are malignant and creeping, which spread abroad as the *Herpes* doth, and according to the malignity of the humour, which breeds them, they are either the easier or harder to be cured: those which come of some salt flegme, and which are neither deepe nor painfull, nor of an ill colour, nor placed at the bottome of the throat, but

*Aphthe*, or the ulcers of the mouth.

but are onely about the gums, the tongue, and the sides of the mouth, which neither grow bigger, nor spread farther, they are easie to be healed. But those which creepe farther, and are very painfull, blackish, and which possesse the bottome of the throat, having an Ague joyned with them, they (as Hippocrates saith) are malignant, and hard to be cured. I have seen some, that for all the care and diligence that could be used to them, have fallen into a Gangrene. Which hath happened to divers, and of late to a Cutlers childe, who was looked into by *Mons. Habigat* Master Barber Chirurgeon of Paris, although hee had sought and used all the meanes, both skilfully and faithfully, that Art could require.

non iniqua ma  
non iniqua ma

For the helping of them that are curable, it is fit, that the Nurse keepe a good dyet, let the ulcers be gently rubbed a little with Honey of Roses, and Syrup of Violets: But if they will not yeeld to this, then the Chirurgeon shall touch them with a little *Aqua fortis*, but to every drop of the said water, he must add twelve of Plantains water, so that if he would have it to be in strength, it then with a little rle clout tyed to the end of a sticke, the ulcer shall be touched gently. They may also use this Gargarisme.

A Gargarisme for the ulcers of the mouth.

*R. Hwd. Antag. Rng. Agrimon. Plantag. Rosat. Rub. an. m. s. Coquantur perfect. in aqua communi, iinto lat. ad 3. m. dissolve Mellis Rosat. ʒi. Pionon ʒi. Alumi ʒs. fiat gargarisme, utatur ut dixi.*

The ulcers must be dried up.

After they have used this Gargarisme a while, let there be added to it, of *Berberis*, flowers of pomegranats,

An experiment  
of the Author.

granats, and a little of the juice of the said pomgranats. For the ulcers of the mouth require medicines to dry them up, which do their operation speedily. But if you perceiue that they spread or crepe farther abroad, use this medicine, which I may scilicet use very often, and find it to be very singular good; which is to take halfe an ounce of Rosewater, or Plantaine water, adding thereto halfe a dragma of oyle of Nutt, and to touch the fores with it.

And this medicine did neuer deceiue me: but the Chirurgion ought to tast it first with his tongue to see that it be neither too strong nor too sharpe.

#### CHAP. XVII.

*Of the Inflammation, swelling and superfluousness,  
which happens in the Gums called Parontis,  
and Eponitis.*



It is seene oftentimes, that the gums of little Children are swolne, and inflamed, though their teeth be not ready to come forth: which accident the Ancients called *Parontis* and *Eponitis*.

The *Parontis*, is a little swelling red and angry, which is either bred of a cholericke, hot, and adust blood, or else of some sharp and salt flegme, which falleth out of the brain upon the gums. It may proceede also, from some vapor, that riseth out of the stomacke; which causeth not onely the gums to be

be swollen and inflamed; but oftentimes the jaw, the cheek, and the necke, to be also affected with it, bringing also with it an Ague and paine; which is the occasion that these tumours doe often suppurate: and chiefly when there is any grosse blood mingled therewithall, otherwise it will resolve and be digested well enough.

For the cure of it, you must use at the beginning gentle Lotions and Gargarismes, that are cooling, and not much repelling; adding thereto towards the end, some things that may resolve. You may use this Gargarisme.

A Gargarisme.

℞. *Hord. matag. m. i. Phorag. Rortula, Accia, Agrimon. m. m. i. Flor. Viber. p. ʒ. fiat decollin in colatura ad ʒvi. dissolva fr. violac. ʒj. sirup. & Rosæ sicca ʒ i. fiat Gargarisma.*

Here with shall you cause the childe to wash and Gargarize his mouth, if he be able; if not, then you must often rub his gummes therewith. Or else you shall anoint his guttes with the Mucilage of Psyllium and Quince seeds, drawne with Rose and Plantaine water, adding thereto a little sirup of Iujabs.

A Medicine for the necke and jawes.

If the Jaw-bone cheeks, and necke be inflamed, the Ancients counsell us to rub them with a little oyle of Roses, adding thereto some juyce of Nightshade, Mefues, Ointment of Roses is also very good for it.

If the childe be any thing bigge; let him take this drinke.

℞. *Rosæ. Elixir in rosula. ʒiij. sem. Portu-lac.*



*rim & Reforum Babronum, at Medicamentum.*

This medicine hath power to bind and strengthen the part, and to make the tumor resolve.

Oftentimes the said *opulis* groweth so big, that we are constrained to try it, not being able either to resolve it, or bring it to suppuration. Some of them also are of an ill, and malignant quality which must not be touched or maddled with, but with great discretion.

CHAP. XVIII.

*of the two strings, or ligaments that a child hath under his tongue.*

**I**N Children that are newly borne there are commonly found two strings; the one comes from the bottome of the *maxilla* tongue, and reacheth to the very tip and end thereof. This string is very slender and soft, and it hindreth the child from putting it out at length, and from taking the nipple (as they say) that he cannot sucke well. This string must be cut with a sizer within a few daies after he is borne; and then the nurse must thrust her finger under the child's tongue and lay there at the first a little chaw'd salt to keep it from growing together againe.

There is also another string, which is both harder, bigger, and more firme, then the former; which

begin at the root of the tongue, and stretcheth it selfe almost through the middle thereof, the which string is sometimes so short, that it hindereth the child from stretching it, and putting it forth of his mouth, and also from turning and waggung it, thereby to bring hooke the meate he hath chew'd, that he may swallow it. This may easily bee perceived, if you bid the child to put out his tongue, hee cannot do it, for when hee goes about to do it, it binds and folds double in his mouth, hee not being able to make it come farther then his lips: which much hindereth him in his speech, and in the delivery of his words, making him commonly to stammer.

How to cut the string of the tongue.

The cure of this is onely to be done by the Chirurgion, and that after two manners: the first is thus: you must cause the childe's tongue to bee lifted up, and held stiffe on both sides, as well by your own finger, as by some others, which shall hold the other side of the tongue, to keepe it stiffe, and then the string to be cut with a sharpe instrument, thrusting in the point, as deepe as shall bee fit.

Another way.

The second way also is, by lifting up the tongue and holding it fast, (as hath beene already said) and then with a needle with a double shred in it, you shall draw the third crosse the said string, or ligament (to ward, as farr as you would cut it) and tye it hard, cutting away the ends of the thred somewhat neere the knot, and so let it stay there, till it hath separated that part of the string or ligament thus.



thus tyed. But this way in my opinion, is more  
 painfull then the former. But whether it be cut or  
 tyed, it will leave an ulcer which must be healed, as  
 we have shewed before, taking care that the string  
 grow not together againe.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Cough which happeneth to little  
 Children.



Especially that little Children are often  
 troubled with a Cough: which hap-  
 pens unto them, because their lungs  
 are weak and tender, which for every  
 little thing that troubleth them,

they endeavour to discharge and rid themselves of  
 it, with some striving agitation.

They may also catch this disease by lying uncor-  
 vered, or by being carryed abroad in the cold, or in  
 the evening, which maketh them to cough, bringing  
 up little or nothing. They may also cough with  
 sucking too eagerly, drawing the milke faster then  
 they can swallow it: & so some few drops by chance  
 get into the *Trachea Arteria*, which maketh them ne-  
 ver leave coughing till they have brought in all up  
 againe.

The causes of  
 the cough.

The cough may likewise proceed from the di-  
 stillation of some sharp, thin humour, which com-  
 meth from the braine, and fallerh downe upon the  
 lungs by the *Trachea Arteria*. There may also bee

gathered, some humour in the Pipes or Passages of the lungs, which Nature at length striveth to expell and thrust forth.

The cough is dangerous for children.

Of what occasion soever it proceed, it is very dangerous, especially, if it be of long continuance. For feare least through continuall reaching and coughing, the child get a rupture, or bursting, or else an Ague, by reason hee cannot sleepe nor take his rest, onely some headach, paine of the sides and stomacke, and vomiting.

Concerning the Cure of it, we must have a respect to the cause, & so accordingly it must be remedied.

Medicines against the Cough.

If the Cough proceed of Cold, let the little one be kept reasonable warme, and give him a little oyle of sweet Almonds mingled with sugar Candy: let his breast be rubd all over with fresh butter and oyle of sweet Almonds: and then lay upon it some warme cloth: if his nose be stuffed, let it be unstopped, with a little oyntment of Roses, or some of the liquor you boyle your meat in, whereof you may put a lirtle up into his nose for that purpose.

If it proceed of some sharp humour: then it must bee mitigated and thickned, by giving him a little syrup of Violets, and of Iuibes mingled together. As also let him use Juice of Licorise, Oile of sweet Almonds and sugar Candy; and Lozenges of *Distragacanthum frigidum*. If the child be any thing big, you may give Barley cream, with a few white Poppy seeds: and let him drinke a Prisine made with Barly, and Licorise.

Let all his brest and throat bee annointed with Oile

Oyle of Violets washed in Barley water.

Apply to the nape of his necke a toft of bread  
hot, or else halfe a loafe new out of the Oven. Meanes to stay  
the Cough.

If the Cough hinders him from sleeping, you  
may give him a little firrup of Jujubes, and Violets,  
with as much *Diacodium sine speciebus*, mingled alto-  
gether: Let him also use conserve of Roses.

If the Cough come by reason of some flegme,  
or grosse and slimie humour that is gathered toge-  
ther in the breast: You must give the childe a little  
firrup of Maidenhaire, with as much firrup of Li-  
corice, and Hyssope, or Honey of Narbone, ming-  
led together: *Rass* addeth in this case a little Fen-  
nell water.

Anoint his breast also with this Ointment.

*Rx. Ol. Amygdal. dulc. ʒj. Vnguent. Resumpt. ʒʒ. An Ointment  
acung. Asferis, Gallinae an. ʒij. liquoris sicut  
lento igne proliu; ut dictum est.* for the breast.

I have already set downe divers other Medicines,  
in my former Booke, speaking of the Cough which  
hapneth unto women with childe; to which place  
I referre you for your farther satisfaction.

CHAP. X X.

*Of the inflammation and swelling of the  
childs Navell.*



Five times, after the childs Navell is tied,  
there cometh some inflammation, swell-  
ling, or ulcer, and especially this hapneth;  
when that which hath boene tied, is divided and  
fallen.

The cause of  
the swelling of  
the Navell.

fallen away, it being not perfectly suppurated. The same Navell may swell also, either through the child's eager crying, or when he coughs much, the tumour and swelling being full of wind, and sometimes also of water.

## The Cure.

The inflammation may be cured by the use of *Unguentum Rosatum*, or with a little *Unguentum Refrigerans Galeni*: The bathing it also with Oile of Roses, and a little *Unguentum Populeum*, may doe very much good.

As for the Ulcer, if it be but small, you may put upon it some fine flowre, or the powder of a rotten post, or else a little Plaster of *Diapompholigos*, and *Unguentum desiccativum*, mingled together: You may also sometimes touch it with a little Allome water, and scitarrize it.

As for the swelling, you must have a care that the Navell stand not forth too farre, and swell not more than it ought. Now to hinder that, you shall lay upon it a cloth eight or ten-times doubled, and then swath it gently, that the said Navell stand not forth too much: which ought to be done, if there be neither wind nor water contained within it. But when either of them are there, *Avicenna* useth this Medicine.

*Re. Spica Nard. pul. ʒ ss. Terebinth. ʒ iii. Ol. Amygdal. dulc. parum. fiat unguentum.*

But mee thinks, to give it a forme and consistence, it were not amisse to adde unto it a little wax.

I use commonly this Plaster, whether there be any

*Avicenna* Medicine.

to be used  
to be used  
to be used

any wind or water : which hath power to resolve, consume, and dry up the said wind, or water.

R. *Rugwort*, *Comitiff*, *desiccet. rubr.* an.  $\zeta$   $\beta$ , *Sarcor.* Co-  
*lumb.*  $\zeta$  ii. *pul. Irid. florent.*  $\zeta$  iii. *Sulphur. vivi*  $\zeta$  i. *Ol.*  
*Nard.*  $\zeta$   $\beta$ . *Cera.*  $\rho$ . *Terebinth. g. a. fiet Ceratum.*

An approved  
 medicine.

But the onely thing is, to keepe it downe with a boulster and swathing, that it swell not, or stand forth the more.

Some use *Emplastrum contra Rupturam* for it.

CHAP. XXI.

Of Gripings and Fretting in the belly, which trouble little Children.



Hese gripings doe trouble little children very much; the causes are two : For either they come because the excrement called *Mecconium*, is retained in the guts: (This humour is blacke and slimy like melted pitch; which pricketh and wringeth their guts, and puts them to paine, to void it) Or else these Gripings are bred of the abundance of milk, which the child taketh, or of the ill quality thereof : the which being not digested, doth putrifie and corrupt, and turnes either into choller, or into sharpe and salt flegme : Or else there is bred some wind, which causeth a distention of the stomach & guts. The cold aire, and the wormes, also may cause it, which I leave to be handled in another place.

R r

Con-

The Cure.

Concerning the Cure, if the said excrement called *Meconium*, be the cause of the said gripings, it must bee evacuated by little suppositaries made of the rib of a Beete leafe, or of Sope; and also by Clysters, to draw away this humour, and make it come forth.

If too much milke be the cause, then the Nurse shall not give the childe sucke so often, nor in such plenty: If it proceed from wind, and that doe cause the childe to be thus troubled, it shall be discuffed with Fomentations applied to the belly and navell; and with Carminative Clysters, which shall bee given him, as this:

A Clister for  
the wind.

℞. *Malu. Bisnal. Parietar. an. ℞. j. flor. Chamæm. Melilot. summitat. Aneth. an. p. j. semip. Anis. Fœnicul an. ij. coquantur perfecte in iure pulli, vel capiti deirec. in colatum ad ℥ vj. dissolve Dactilolic. Mellis Anil. osat. Saccar rubr. an. ℥ ℞. Ol. Chamæmel. Aneth. an. ℥ vi. fiat Clister.*

Of the foresaid decoction you may also make a Pomentation with fine sponges: and then let his belly be rubbed and anointed with Oile of Camomile, Melilot, and Dill, mingled together.

Parietary of the wait, with a few Camomile flowers, and tops of Dill, fried with oile of Lillies, and Dill, and then laid to the belly hot, are very good.

If you perceive that these gripings proceed of some sharpe, biting or chollericke humour, that gnawes and gripes the stomack and the guts (which may be knowne, both by feeling his belly, which

will

will be hotter than ordinary, and also by the stooles which will be yellow and greenish) then shall you give him little Clusters of milke, or else of the broth of Veale, Capon, or of a sheeps head, wherein you shall dissolve two drams of *Benedicta Lactiva*, and as much Oyle of Violets, and red Sugar.

Let his belly be rubbed with Oyle of Roses and Violets, or else with Mesues Ointment of Roses.

You may give him to take inwardly some Oyle of sweet Almonds newly drawne & mingled with Sugar candy.

And if the childe be any thing big, it will be very fit to give him an ounce of the compound sirrup of *Cickory* with *Rubarb* dissolved into *Agrimony* water, or of *Cardus Benedictus*, you may also mingle amongst his pap or gruell, a little *Cassia* drawne, the better to make him take it.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Wormes.



He Wormes doe trouble little children very cruelly, and therefore not without good reason did *Hippocrates* call them *Theriodigastros*, as cruell beasts in the belly. There bee of them of divers formes and bignesse.

Some of them are round and long, named *Elmintes*, which breed in the small guts, they ascend sometimes into the stomacke, and come forth at

R r 2

the

in a woman

in a child.

the mouth. There be others that are long and flat, called *Tenia*, which are as it were a band couched, and placed all along the great guts. Some are little and slender, as the point of a needle, and are called *Ascarides*, by reason of the itching which they cause in the great gut & the Fundament, in which place they are bred: and oftentimes they are inclosed as it were with a little purse. I have seene divers that have voided a million, which have become all of them fastned together.

Touching their generation, *Hippocrates* observeth, that little children doe bring the Wormes even from their mothers belly, but most commonly they are bred of putride and corrupted flegme, as also of other ill humours which lie in the guts.

When children are troubled with the Wormes, they wax leane, they have no desire to eat, their belly aketh, swels, and growes bigger; they start in their sleep, and doe sometimes swoone, and have a little dry Cough: the colour of their face is pale and wan, and their eyes great; they rub their Nose commonly; and when they are troubled with small Wormes, their Fundament itchieth. But the surest signe that a child hath the Wormes, of what nature soever they bee, is when hee voids them with his excrements by stoole, or that they come up by the mouth, or through the nose, which I have oftentimes seene come to passe.

Concerning the Prognosticke, as soone as you perceive that the little one is troubled, you must seeke to help him, for the deferring of it may breed dan-



danger. The Ancients have written, that there are some which come forth through the groine and nether belly; which is witnessed by *Paulus Aegineta*, and *Avicen*.

The Wormes that come forth by stooles, mingled with blood, shew that they have gnawed the yeines of the guts, from whence that blood floweth. If they are brought up by vomiting, it sheweth that they provoke and trouble the stomacke.

Some have observed, that a childe which hath the Wormes, is in danger of death, if he be taken with a shortnesse of breath, and becomes moist and cold.

For the Cure, if the childe be young, it will be very convenient that the Nurse keep a good diet: let her abstaine from all white meats, faw fruits, Pease, Beanes, Fish, and all other meats that are of hard concoction, and easie to be corrupted.

*Rhasis* forbids us to give young children any Medicines by the mouth, and appointeth onely some outward Medicines, as an Emplaister made of Cammin-seed, and an Oregall laid upon the Navell.

In imitation of whom, I use to appoint this Emplaister.

Rc. *Pil. sine quib.* ʒ s. *Pod. absinth.* ʒ i. *Myrrh* Aloes an. ʒ ij. *farin. Lapis.* ʒ s. *Jellid Babuli.* q. s. fiat Emplastrum, admodum supra umbilicum.

An Emplaister for the Worms.

You may also give the childe, if he be somewhat bigge,

Rr 3

# The Nursing

big, a little of the scrapings of Harts home in his milke, or other spoon-meat. Those that are rich doe commonly give their children some *Bezoards* stone, and *Vniornes* home.

But when the child is growne somewhat older, besides the former Medicines: let him take a little drinke made with decoction of Purslaine, and the shavings of Harts home, with a little juyce of Citrons: If he can, let him take a little expression of *Rubarb*, infused in the foresaid decoction: or else an ounce of sirrup of Cichory. For it killeth and driveth forth the wormes downward. But it will be good to give him first a Clister of milke, red Sugar, and honey, to draw downe the wormes by this sweetnesse, to the nether parts.

There is no Medicine that will doe more good, if the child can take it, than to take little Pills made of *Aloes* gilded, in an egge, and so sup them up.

If he refuse these Medicines aforesaid, then you may give him some of the powder for the wormes in a roasted Apple, or with Prunes or Raisins. The safest way is rather to drive them forth, than to kill them: for oftentimes they breed others when they stay in the body.

## CHAP. XXIII. Of breeding teeth.

hippos. lib. 3.  
Aphorism. 25.



*Hippocrates* writeth, that amongst all the diseases which children are subject unto, there is none that troubleth them more, than the coming forth and paine

paine of their teeth. For the breeding of teeth, bringing divers dangerous accidents, with it, as Agues, Watchings, Convulsions, scouring, yea, and oftentimes death; From whence cometh the proverbe, *C'est un balayage jusque aux dents*. It is a goodly child, if his teeth prove milde. And therefore, not without cause did *Galen* say in his Commentary, that the paine of a child's teeth coming forth, was more grievous and hard to be endured, than the paine of a needle thrust in any part of the flesh; which continues no longer then the needle staves there; but in the coming forth of the teeth, it is not so, because then the gums doe prick, and shoot continually, which for the most part are inflamed; and this pricking and shooting will increase till the teeth be quite come forth.

The ill accidents which breeding of the teeth brings to children.

Now you may know whether the child breeds teeth, by the heat of his mouth, which makes him drivell, and sivey, and his gums will be swollen; he holds his fingers still in his mouth, by reason of the itching of his gums, which increasing more and more, puts him to extreme paine, and makes the blood ready to startle out of his eyes.

*Hippocrates* in his booke, *de Dentitione*, gives this judgement of it. They that doe scoure, when they breed teeth, are not so subject to Convulsions, as they that are boned.

*Aelius. s. m. 4. cap. 9.*

If they be taken with a sharpe ague, they are the lesse troubled with Convulsions.

Those that are in good health when their teeth come forth; if they be very drowsy and sleepey; there

is danger least they fall into a Convulsion.

They that breed teeth in Winter are lesse troubled then those in Sommer: and if they be a little helped, they will endure it the easier.

All that are troubled with Convulsions at the coming forth of their teeth, do not die, but many escape.

Their teeth come forth hardest, that have a little cough withall: and if they be troubled with pricking and shooting of the gums, they become very leane.

Considering all the former accidents, and also the danger wherein the child is, there must bee speedy helpe: which shall bee done eyther by ordinary medicines, or else by Chirurgie.

First therefore, the Nurse must often rub the childs gums with her finger alone, thereby to open the pores of them, & make them soft, that the moisture may breath out the better: and sometimes let her anoint her finger eyther with Hony, fresh butter, the braines of a Hare, or such like (either roasted or raw) or else with oyle of Lillies, or Hens greafe. Some hold it for a great secret to rub the childs gums, with the milke of a birch, eyther of it selfe, or mingled with the braines of a pig: *Avicen* prescribes that they should hold a slice of fat meat betweene their gums, and chew it often. And it is to bee noted, that all the foresaid medicines ought to be applyed more then luke warme.

The Ancients make mention of some medicines which by a hidden property have vertue to ease this

The Cure.

An experiment

*Avicen.*

this paine, and help to bring forth the teeth. Some take the tooth of a male Viper, and set it in gold or silver, to rub the childs gummes with it. *Aetius* bids, that we should hang about the childs necke a Jasper stone that is very greene, and let it touch the stomacke. *Avicen* saith, that the root of Smalage hung about a childs necke, doth asswage and ease the paine which happens in the coming forth of the teeth.

*Aetius.*

*Avicen.*

Neither will it be amisse, before the paine grow to be great and vehement, to rub the legs, thighs, shoulders, backe, and nape of the childs necke, drawing still downwards, thereby to alter and turne the course of humours which fall downe upon the gummes and passages of the throat, in great quantity, which may stifle him.

But none of all these Medicines doe any good, as oftentimes it happens, then the safest and speediest way is, to make an incision all along the top of the gumme just upon the teeth. Which the Chirurgion shall know is fit to be done, when hee sees the gumme growes white, and perceives that the teeth are even ready to cut the flesh. The Nurses themselves shew us that this practise is very necessary and fit, for oftentimes they doe scratch & teare the gumme with their nailes, which turneth to the childs great profit and ease, and keeps him from lying languishing so long in paine: And I can assure the young Chirurgion that I have practised it, and caused it to be practised, with very good success, above twenty times.

An experience of the Author.

¶

Now

Now when you perceive that the teeth beginne to come forth, whether it bee by the foresaid Medicines, by the lancing of the gums: *Asiaca* would have the Nurse to hold a peece of an *Ireat* root in her hand, and let the childe champe upon it: or in stead thereof she may use a sticke of Licorice bruised at the one end, or else a peece of an *Althea* root: For this remedy doth asswage the paine, because it maketh the moisture which is about the childs gums, breast, and root of the tongue, to come away, and cause the rest of the teeth to come forward. And therefore they doe use commonly for this purpose to hang about the childs necke, either a Wolfes tooth, or a branch of red Corall set in silver, for the childe to hold in his hand, and to rub his gums with it.

## CHAP. XXIV.

## Of the Convulsions which happen to little Children.



It is not my intent in this place to handle particularly all the kinds and differences of Convulsions, but onely I will content my selfe to speake of that which commonly troubleth little children, and is called by *Hippocrates*, *Morbus Puerilis*, the childs disease, and by *Asiaca*, *Mater Puerorum*, the mother of little children.

*Sup. de Aera loc. et Aquæ.*  
*Morbus puerilis.*  
*Mater puerorum*

*Hippocrates* calleth this disease: *Sacer*, and therefore

fore it is easie to be coniectured, that it is an *Epilepticall* Convulsion.

The cause proceedeth (as *Avicen* saith) either because that the milke (wherewith the child is nourished) is easily corrupted; though hee sucke but little: or by reason of the great quantity, that the child taketh, which because of his weake and dainty stomacke cannot be well concocted, and digested: or through the ill quality of the milk which the child sucks daily; or through the weaknesse of the sinewes, which doe receive easily the moisture that is bred in the childs body, whereof Nature doth unburden her selfe, upon them, which happeneth chiefly, (as *Hippocrates* saith) to children that are fat, and have full bodies, and are bound in their bellies.

An Aphorisme  
of *Hippocrates*.

This Convulsion oftentimes chanceth through the childs breeding of teeth, and especially of his dogteeth, by meanes of the paine, inflammation, fevers, and watchings, which do commonly follow upon it.

Divers Causes  
of a Convulsion.

The cold aire also may bee a cause, and likewise the Wormes, which the child may have, or some ill vapour that striketh up, and offends the braine: which may arise out of the stomacke by reason of some putrefaction; or else from that which is bred by meanes of the wormes.

As for the Prognosticke hereof, *Hippocrates* saith that the children, which have cleane heads, are subiect to Convulsions: And contrariwise that those which have scabs, on their head, and breake

The Prognosticke.  
*Hippo. de morbo  
Sacro.*

Good sentences  
of the Ancients

forth, are commonly in good health : for by them they are purged and cleansed of all ill humours, that they had gathered in their mothers wombe. *Galen* saith, that the danger is easily perceived by the childs shortnesse of breath: *Avicen* and *Paulus Aegineta*, do assure us that the continuance of this disease long, doth oftentimes kill the childe. *Aretius* saith, that one violent fit only, is enough to kill him: they that are younger, are in greater danger of death than the elder, as *Celius Aurelius* writeth, because they cannot so easily beare out the fits as the elder.

There fore wee must take great heed in the cure of it, not thinking that this disease may be helped by the childs growing older.

The Cure.

The Cure must be varied according to the cause of the disease. As if it proceed of repletion, and fullnesse of humours, then must the Nurse eat lesse, and not give the child sucke so often, in both which she must observe a meane: and therefore the Nurse shall rather use meats that are somewhat drying : then such as are too moist : And not without good reason doth *Avicen* allow the use of Wine well tempered, rather than Water alone.

If the little one have need to be purged, it will bee fitter to give the Nurse a purgation than the child : which must neither be very strong, nor with any *Diagridium*, but gentle and easie, such as *Cassia*, *Manna*, and the like.

Vomiting good  
for the childe.

If the child be subject to vomit, especially if he be very big, the vomiting may doe him much good

Cupping  
glasses.

When he comes to be 2. or 3. yeares old, you may



apply cupping glasses, upon his neck and shoulders: which is much commended by *Avicen*: thereby to draw the moisture of the braine to the lower parts.

And concerning particular medicines, they must not be too hot (as some appoint) for the affections of the Nerves, because those heate too much and (as *Rhasis* saith) they doe onely resolve the thinner part: But we must rather use in the beginning such as mollifie and soften, and do moderately resolve, comforting withall.

Among many other medicines, *Dioscorides* saith, that *Oleum Irium* cureth the convulsion, which troubleth little children: And it is likewise commended by the ancient Practicioners: This Oyle is described by *Mesue*.

*Dioscorides.*

*Avicen* approveth *Oleum Irium*, *Keyrinum*, and *Liliorum*: Hee saith moreover, that hee hath made triall of this medicine.

℞ *Maioran. m. ii. macerentur in olei Amigdalae dulc. vel Zeeamin. ℥ vi. & vini generis totidem in Balneo Mariae, & bulliant lento igne ad consumptionem vini; coletur & servetur usui.*

*Avicennae medicinae.*

You may also use very safely this Balme.

℞ *Axung. Anser. Gallin. Anat. Cucul. an. ℥ i. Mei ul. cruris vitul. ℥ i. B. Medul. Cervi. ℥ vi. fol. Sako. Maioran. Ebuli, an. an. i. flor. Chamemel. Melilot. Hyperic. an. p. ii. flor. Rosifmar. p. i. Mastich. Mirrh. Irid. florent. an. ℥ ii. Olei Lilior. Lumbric. an. ℥ ii. macerentur omnia in balneo Mariae spatio trium dierum: deinde lento igne fiat decoctio, coletur & servetur usui.*

A Balme for the Convulsions.

Balsamum Anse-  
vinum.

The ancient Practitioners doe very much commend the Balme made of a Goose stuffed with the foresaid ingredients, and roasted : and then use the dripping of it instead of a Balme, which I have seen practised.

*Galen* doth attribute much to the hanging of a little chaplet, made of the male Piony root, about the childs necke.

*Oribasius* much commended the Smaradge or Emerald, that lookes greenish, which is found either in the stomake, or neast of a swallow.

A Sovereigne  
Medicine.

- But the safest medicine of all is, to lay a Caustic to the hinder part of the childs head, in the nape of the necke, betweene the first and second *Vertebra*, or ioynt : which I have done to some. And at Florence it is practised to all children, as soone as they are borne : yea, they do it, even with an actual Caustery.

If you perceive that these *Epilepticall* convulsions doe proceed from the Wormes in the childs guts, then you may give him this Clyster.

A Clyster.

Rc *Hidromel. simpl. ℥i. iii. Enira recent. ℥i. Aloes pulv. ℥ss. fiat Clyster.*

Some give this powder.

A powder for  
the wormes.

Rc *Pul. Lumbricor. terrest. in vino albo lotorum & extinct. ℥ii. Sacchar. ℥i. misce. Capiat singulis diebus ℥ii. per se, vel cum aqua, vel succo Portulacæ.*

You may give a child, that is somewhat big, as of eight or tenne moneths old, a dredge powder made of Worme-feed, or of Rubarbe.

Besides

Besides, there be many other Medicines, which I have already set downe in their proper place, as Emplasters, Sirrups and Purgations for this disease, to which place I referre you.

If these Convulsions come of some ill and maligne vapour, the childe may take some Bezoards stone, and Unicorne's horne, three or foure graines at a time of them both, or either of them with a little Purslaine water; or else you may mingle five or six graines of Triacle, or Mithridat, with the said water, and so give it him.

Let the Nurse use to take some of this Opiate very often: which the child also may doe when he is growne somewhat bigge.

Rc. Rad. Peoniae subtil. pul. ℥ ss. Theriac. water. ℥ ij. Cons. Rosar. Parag. Buglos. an. ℥ vj. sirup. Conservat. Citri q. s. fiat Opiata: de qua Nutric capiat singulis diebus ℥ j. mane, & infra ℥ ss. cum aqua Cardui Benedicti.

An Oplate.

As for Vomiting, Scowring, or being bound in the body, which accidents happen to little children: I referre you to that which I have set downe heretofore for the Mother, (only diminishing the quantity) because I would avoid often repetition.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Watchings, wherewith young children are troubled.

AND not without good cause doth Hippocrates say, that too much watching in a child,

Hippoc. lib. 3. Aphorismos.

child, is a disease: because sleep is naturally proper to a childe. And when it falls out that hee cannot sleepe, there must needs be somewhat that troubles and offends him.

Whereby a child may be hindered from sleeping.

A child may be hindered from sleeping, by lying in a chamber that is either too light, too hot, or full of smoke: or else because the cloaths lie too heaue on him: or because of much noise or paine, as it happens to them when they breed teeth, as likewise by having a pin that pricks them: or else because they are not cleane. Besides, the child may be hindered from sleeping, through the overmuch quantity of milke that hee hath sucked, as also though it be taken in small quantity, if it chance to corrupt; because (as *Avicen* saith) by meanes of this putrefaction, there is commonly bred wind and vapours in the braine.

Signes that the child is a milke.

The signes hereof are euident enough; as when the childe crieth continually, and cannot be stilled or quieted at all by the teat. Then (as *Gordonius* saith) their eye-browes seeme swolne, and sometimes their countenance becomes very wanne and pale: which comes so to passe (as *Avicen* saith) through the dissipation of the spirits: and because the braine is filled full of vapours and exhalations.

The Cure.

Concerning the Cure, wee must take away the cause that nourisheth this watching, if it bee by lying in a place that is too light and open to the aire, then must the windowes bee shut, making it darker: if the chamber where he lieth be too hot, or if the child haue too many cloaths on him, then must

must he be laid cooler, and have fewer clothes, and be without any noise.

If breeding of teeth be the cause, then shall it be helped, as hath been already said.

Besides, the childe shall be unswathed, and laid in cleane clouts, and then the Nurse shall look whether there be any pin, or fold of his cloaths, or any other thing that hurts him: She must neither give him sucke so often, nor in so great quantity: and to helpe to void the corruption that may be in his stomacke, it will bee good to give the childe some little Clyster, or gentle Burgation. Likewise, the Nurse must rocke and sing to him: and if you find that hee cannot take any rest by all these meanes, then may you give him a little Barley water, or Barley creame, with a few white Poppie seeds in it: or else you may let him take a spoonfull of sirap of Violets and Diacodium mingled together: But you must abstaine by all meanes from giving him any Narcoticall or stupifying Medicines, according to the opinion of all Practitioners. *Rhazes* bids us anoint the inside of the childs nose with oile of Violets, and juyce of Lettuce, putting thereto also a little juyce of Henbane; and yet he goes farther, for he addeth some Opium to it. But herein we must be very warie and circumspect, and rather forbear the use of it.

Divers meanes  
to make a child  
sleepe.

Of the affrightings, startings, and raging, which happen to young Children.



Children are naturally very greedy, and gluttonous, and therefore many times, and especially when they grow somewhat big, and are wained, they doe fill themselves with much milke, or with store of divers other victuals. Beside they are subject to breed wormes, which dying, abide still in their guts, by reason of which there grows much corruption both in the stomach and guts, and also in the mesenterie, and this corruption growing hot by the heat and moisture of the child, it sends up vapours to the brain from the aforesaid parts; which mingling themselves with the spirits, which are there placed, doe cause dreames, frights and startings in the sleepe, and (as *Avicen* witnesseth) makes children afraid of things which are not at all to be feared.

*Galien Hip. lib.  
3. Aphorif. 24.*

*Galen* teacheth us, that this feare happens, then when the stomacke of the child is weake, and the meat which he taketh corrupts in it: which causeth vapours, and fumes to rise to the head, and so brings these terrors.

This may also happen to those which are more in yeares, by the use of bad meares: especially if the mouth of the stomacke be weake and feoble. And there-

therefore ~~as~~ saith, that bad concoction makes bad dreames.

As for the signes that belong hereunto, there can none bee observed in children that cannot speake, but onely (as *Pliny* saith) that as soone as they bee awake, they will screech & cry out, as if they were out of their wits, and utterly cast away: and commonly you finde them all of a water, and quaking every part of them: And if you aske them why they cry, they which can speake will say, that they were made afraid, and that they saw something in their sleepe. Moreover, they that are thus frighted, are much given to vomiting, they are pale of countenance, and sometimes very red: and also they doe hide their faces, and if any one come neare they cry out, and are afraid of him.

Thus may wee easily observe that such dreames and frights happen not to young children, but when they are ill at ease, and full of bad humours. And this is witnessed by *Aristotle*, who saith, that young infants are not subject to dreames: experience teaching us, that those who as yet have not discretion to know good from bad, are not feared with terrible and fearefull sights; but contrariwise, doe laugh at them, and are well pleased.

For the Cure of this accident, both the Nurse, and also the childe (when hee comes to eat) must avoid all meats which doe corrupt the stomacke, and such as are apt to breed grosse and malignant vapours, such as Pease, Beanes, Leckes, Onions, Coleworts, which (as *Dioscorides* reporteth) doe

T t 2

procure

The signes to know whether a childe bee frighted in his sleepe.

*Aristot. de hist. anim. lib. 4. c. 10.*

The Cure.

The diet, that  
the Nurse, and  
the child must  
keepe.

procure sad and melancholicke dreames.

Let them feed upon good meates, and in a moderate quantity, that so the stomacke may not bee overcharged, and that the concoction may bee the more easie. *Rhasis* wiseth the Nurse to drink a cup of good wine.

They must not  
sleep presently  
af. or meat.

After that the child hath sucked, and the Nurse hath eaten, they must not (according to the precept of *Avicen*) go to sleepe presently, because the meate cannot descend so soone to the bottome of the stomacke, there to bee embrac'd and perfectly concocted: And when part thereof staves at the upper Orifice of the stomacke, then the fumes and vapours thereof doe easily rise, and ascend to the braine.

Medicines for  
the child.

If there be any bad humours abiding within the stomacke, guts or mesentery, let them bee purged out. *Avicen* giveth to the child a little hony fasting. If he bee somewhat big, you may give him a little *Cassia*, a spoonefull of sirup of Cichory, and sirup of Damaske roses, or some *Manna* in broth.

A liniment for  
the stomacke.

If his stomacke be weake, let it be strengthened with this Liniment.

*Rc. Olei de absynth. et massich. qu. s. pulver. gamophyl. gr. vi. cere. 3 s. liquefiant simul, et fiat litus.*

But especially let the Nurse, and those that come about the child, embolden him: taking heed that they put him not in feare of any thing, by shewing him any picture or beast, or other thing, which may breed any feare, or terror.

C H A P.



CHAP. XXVII.

Of the rupture or falling downe of the gut  
in young Children.



Children, and chiefly Male-children, are much troubled at this day with the rupture, of which, though there be many kinds, yet will I treat at this present only of the falling downe of

The divers kinds of ruptures.

the gut and caule, and of the watery and windie rupture: for those which are called *Camosa* and *Ventricosa*, doe seldome or never happen to young children. I have observed, that many children are borne with these ruptures, which happen, because the child being in the Mothers wombe, doth often strive in turning and winding himselfe, or else doth so straine himselfe, that the guts and caule doe beare downe upon the production of the *Peritonaeum*: which being enlarged, giveth occasion of a rupture.

As for those which are called *Hydrocele*, and *Physocele*, which is the watery and windie rupture, it cannot be denied, but that the childe before hee be borne (if he draw bad humours from the mother) breeds these waters and winds, which may flow downe into the purses of the cod.

Neverthelesse, most commonly the kinds of ruptures are bred after the child is borne and come into the World: which happens vpon divers occa-

The causes of ruptures.

## The Murringo

sions, either because the childe hath cryed much, or through a long Cough, or by filling himselfe too full of milke or victuals; or by leaping, stretching, or straining himselfe too much, going to ride astride upon something.

As for the watty and windie ruptures, they proceed for the most part of the bad nourishment which the child takes, either of his Nurse, or else of himselfe after he is wamed: whereupon growes infinite Crudities and Winds, which steale by the production of the *Peritoneum*, into the cods.

The Cure.

For the cure of the falling downe of the gut, if the childe be very young, keepe him quiet, and still him from crying, and if he eat pap, put into it this powder.

A powder.

*R. Radic. consolid. major. ʒ ij. radic. seilla beate. Mari. & salomonis au. ʒ i s. hermar. ʒ ij. pulver. limacum rubror. ʒ i. fiat omnium pulvis.*

Every time that you make him pap, put a dram, or thereabout, into it, and when you unwash him to make him cleane, use this Fomentation to the part:

A Fomentation

*R. Radic. consolid. major. vsmund. regal. cortic. ulmi. fraxini. an. ʒ s. folior. Plantag. tapst barbat. centibedia. hermaris. caudæ equine. flor. Chamæ. Meliloti, Rosar. rubr. an. m. j. s. balanstior. nucum cupressæ, catic. gland. an. ʒ ʒ. fiant sacculi parvi, coquantur in aquis partibus vini austeri. & aqua sabronum profotu partis.*

After that you have used this Fomentation a quarter

quarter of an hour, dry the part, and then lay upon it this plaister following:

℞. *Yuguentum desiccet. rubr. ℥. ij. pulver. Mastich. libani Sarcocolla, gummi Capresi an. ℥. i. cum Santillo cr. e. Olei Mastich. f. Emplastrum satis molle.*

An Emplaister.

Let this Emplaister bee laid upon the part, and upon that a little bolster, to keepe all fast together that nothing slip off: you shall bind it on, or else use a trusse, but it will be fitter for the childe to have it bound on, and then to be swathed up.

This Fomentation and plaister must be used for the space of thirty or forty dayes: and if the child be somewhat big, let him bee kept quiet in his bed for forty dayes together, taking the powder before described, with broth, or with a little water of Myrrh, or else making the said powder into small Lozenges.

Rest necessary for the childe.

The Fomentations must bee made for him, as is already described, wherwith he must bee bathed halfe an hour, every morning; and then the plaister laid on and fastned with a trusse, or cloth bound on it.

Hee must forsake all windie meats, as Pease, Beans, raw fruits, Salades, and whire meats: feeding upon good meats that are roasted, and of them but in small quantity.

The diet which the childe must keepe.

Let him drinke a little red wine mingled with boyled water: if his belly be bound, give him a little Clyster, or else some broths with Sene in it.

His drinke.

And you must remember, that the Fomentation must

How the child  
must be laid.

must not be used, nor the plaister laid on, nor the trusse or swaths applied, before the gut or caule be put up; if so bee that they bee fallen downe. And especially you must have a care that his head bee laid somewhat low, and his buttocks high, as hee lieth in his bed, that by this meanes nothing may come downe.

Concerning the watery and windy ruptures, the child must keepe the same diet as hath beene already prescribed. And as for locall Medicines, they must be such in both, as have power to attenuate, dry up, discusse, and resolve the waters and wind which is within the purse of the cod:

For the watery rupture, I have often tried this Medicine.

A Plaister.

℞. *Unguent. comitiss. & desiccativu rubr. an. ℥ ij.*  
*stercor. Columbi ℥ ℥. Sulphuris vivi ℥ ij. pulver.*  
*ba. car. Lauri, & semin. Sinapi an. ℥ j. olei Aneth.*  
*& Terebinth. Venete an. ℥ ij. Cere. q. s. fiat*  
*Emplastrum.*

This Emplaister also is of good use for a windy rupture, unlesse you can heale it with this Fomentation.

A Fomentation.

℞. *Rosar. rubr. flor. Chamamel. Melilot. & Aneth.*  
*an. m. j. semin. Fenicul. & Anis. an. ℥. s. folior.*  
*Origani, Calanuenth. an. m. j. baccar. Lauri &*  
*Ireos florent. pulveris. an. ℥ ij. fiant sacculi duo,*  
*Coquantur in aquis partibus vini albi & aque,*  
*pro fotu.*

But when these watry ruptures grow so hard, that they cannot bee dissolved by the Medicine  
afore-

aforesaid: then must they be opened: Which I have practised upon young Infants; and amongst others upon a childe of *Mons. de Vilantury*, being not above two moneths old: and this I did by the counsell of *M. Hantin*, and *M. Duret*, the Kings Physitians in ordinary, and Physitians of *Paris*.

The manner of making this incision, I have set downe in my Booke, Of the Practises of Chirurgery: to which I referre the Reader, where he may finde all the particularities set downe.

CHAP. XXVIII.

*Of the difficulty of making water, wherewith young children are troubled.*



T happens oftentimes, that young children cannot make water, and that upon divers occasions, but chiefly through the fault of urine, which offends either in quantity or quality. The ill quality of the urin is when it is hot sharp, and pricking, which makes the childe afraid to pisse, because of the paine which they feele when their water comes. The Urine offends in quantity, when it is in so great abundance, and doth so overcharge the bladder, that the Fibres being over-stretched, cannot draw themselves together, to expect the Urine: which happens to them which have kept their water too long. And for this cause, children must oft bee called upon to pisse,

The cause why children can hardly pisse.

Children must be often held out to pisse.

V u

both

both when they awake, and when they are changed, to be laid downe to sleepe. And when they grow bigger, let them make water both before and after they eat: for since they abound with moistures, and have their bladder but small, they must in no wise keepe their water: and therefore if sometimes they bepisse themselves in their sleepe, they must not bee much chidden or beaten, for feare lest if they hold their water by force, they fall into this difficulty of voiding it.

If there be any flegme, or slime, or blood mingled with the water: or if there breed any sand or stone, this may bee the cause to hinder the childs urine. And this may happen to young children, as Hippocrates noteth: because they eat much, which procures much crudity, and breeds the matter of the Stone.

Hippocr. lib 3.  
Apo. r. sm. 26.

The Cure.

For the cure hereof, you must proceed according to the cause: which if it be because the urine is sharpe and pricking, or too hot, then if it bee a sucking childe, it will bee good to prescribe the Nurse a Diet, to temper her blood, which it may be is too hot. Let her also be purged, let blood, and bathed, and let her use broths made with coole herbs.

A Diet for the Nurse.

If the bladder of the childe be too full of urine, his belly wil be hard, and strout out: and then let the Nurse sucke the end of his yard, and presse downe his belly a little, toward the bladder: lay to his belly water Cresses, and Pellitory of the wall fried. If this do no good, you must put up finely

an

an hollow probe : and if there be any gravell, stone, or phlegme, the probe will discover it.

If the child be somewhat big, you may give him this medicine.

℞ *Ol. Amigdal. dulc. ℥i. ℞. aqua Parietar. ℥i. succi Lino. ℥i. fiat potus.*

Set him also in a little bath, *Galen*, and *Avicen* doe much commend the water of Rapes, or Turneps, which you may give with a little decoction of parley roots, Dogs tooth, and Dandelion.

But it happens oftentimes, that the child cannot pisse, by reason of some slime that sticks in the passage of the yard, which makes it swell, and passe up, and shew as cleere as a bladder.

For the helpe hereof, you must bring forth the stone, by the helpe of a little instrument, like to this here described, in the fashion of an ear-pisker, which you shall use in this manner.

You must hold downe the child fast, that he stir not; and then the Chirurgion must take the yard between the fore-finger and the thumbe with his left hand, by that part, which is next toward the groine, that is beyond the stone: for feare least in the performance of the worke, it slip up, and goe backe againe : Then holding the little instrument in his right



A medicine for the gravel in the bladder.

hand, let him put it up into the passage of the urine, so far till he meet with the stone: which when he hath found, let him beare downe the instrument, to make it slip under the stone, for to catch hold of it, behind; and when he hath hold of it, let him draw it forth in such manner, as shall be needfull. And it will be necessary to draw it out somewhat strongly, because oftentimes it stickes very hard.

Sometimes it happens, that the stone is so big, that it cannot be taken away by this meanes; and then we are constrained to make an incision in the yard; which must be done in this manner.

You must hold the yard fast with the left hand, taking it by the midst, so that halfe the thicknesse of it may be betweene your finger and thumbe, and the other halfe out, that so the Stone may rise and swell up the more, on that side: Then on that side that the Stone stands up, right over and against the Stone, let an incision be made, so deepe, till you come to the Stone; which when you find, you shall put under it such a small instrument, as hath beene before described, therewith to draw it forth. And afterward let the wound be healed, as an other ordinary wound: taking care, that there grow no litle excrecence of flesh in the passage of the water. I have practized this with very good success: and amongst others, upon the sonne of *Messrs. Robert of Chartres.*

An experience  
of the Author.



## CHAP. XXIX.

*The means to helpe children that pisse in their bed in the night, and cannot hold their water.*

**L**ittle children do commonly pisse a bed, and that for many reasons: As because they breed and abound (as we have already shewed) with store of urine which commeth downe into the bladder, and that is so little, that it is not able to retaine, and keepe it, being in so great quantity, besides the Sphincter muscle is very soft, and weake, by reason of the childs tendernesse: Againe, they doe so go about all the day long, that when they are laid to bed, they sleepe so soundly, that they cannot easily be wakened: whereto may be added, that they use to dreame often in the night, which makes them pisse, thinking that they are awake. Some thinke that wenches are more subject hereto, then boyes.

Now for the delivering and freeing them of this accident, divers Physitions are of opinion, that it is best to let them alone, til they are grown bigger, and not to trouble them with many medicines: For when the child comes to be foure or five year old, the fibers of the Sphincter muscle, which keep the necke of the bladder shut together, grow dry, and stronger, and besides then the child abounds not so much with moisture, and by consequence neither with urine: but yet they must be hindered from drinking

king so much ( as they use in France ) cleere water, and also kept from eating so much raw fruit, and moist meats, and the like, which provoke Vrine.

You must also endeavour to keepe children alwaies loose bellied, which will make them pisse the lesse, as well in the night time, as in the day. And you must warne them to make water before they go to bed, and sometimes also you may waken them out of their sleepe, to put them in minde thereof.

The child must be put in mind to make water.

You must also threaten them, that you will whip them, and likewise make them ashamed, of doing it. But yet for all this, you must not correct them too much: for I have knowne some children (fearing to be beaten, if they pissed a bed) that have tyed their yard themselves, whereof hath followed a Gangrene: which hapned to *Mons. Pareus*, when he was a child, as he himselfe hath told me.

When the child is growne somewhat big, let him eat roasted Chestnuts, Filberds and Acornes: and drinke stil'd water, and a little Claret wine well allayed.

Medicines of the Ancient Physicians.

*Avicen* commendeth the braines of a haire boyled with thicke Wine.

Some hold that the inner skin of a Capons gizzard dried, and made into powder, is singular good. *Rhazes* sets it downe for a secret, that the combe of a Cocke, dried, and made into powder, as also the bladder of a Bull, or a Goat is very good, which *Gardanus* approveth of.

You may give him a fittle water of *Mirtills*, with

with Conserve of Roses, and sirrup of dry Roses.

It will be very fit to bath the part of the child called *Perineum*, with astringent Fomentations, such as we have set downe for the Rupture of *Heria*.

Fomentations  
for the *Peri-  
neum*.

CHAP. XXX.

*Of the Gallings and frettings of the skinne, which happens in the Groine, and betwene the thighs of little children.*



Little children, by reason of the sharp-  
nesse of their urine, and lying in their  
excrements, are much troubled with  
galling and fretting, which weares  
away the thin skin, called *Epidermis*,  
and chiefly about their thighs, and groine, which,  
unlesse the Nurse take the better heed, may grow  
to some foule and malignant Ulcer.

The cause of  
excoriation, or  
galling.

Which, that it may be the better helped, it will  
bee very fit that the Nurse keepe the little one as  
cleane as she can, and that in making him cleane,  
and shifting him she wash his buttocks and thighs  
gently, with a little water of Plantaine, Roses, or  
Nightshade. Some adde thereto a little wine:  
Others make a decoction of Barley, Roses, and  
Plantaine.

The Cure:

I use to prescribe a little Pomatum, wherewith I  
mingle sometimes a little Lime well quenched and  
powdered: *Vnguentum Refrigerans Galeni*, well wa-  
shed in Plantaine and Rose-water, is much com-  
mended.

mended. Both these Medicines, by reason of their oilinesse, doe hinder the Urine and excrements from making the place to smart.

Common medicines,

Women doe commonly besprinkle those parts with meale-dust, or with Barley, or Beane-flower. Some use the powder of a rotten post, or else a litle *Ireas* and *Roses* beaten into fine powder, *Rhasis* useth this Medicine.

*Rx. Amyl. spectii Rosar. Mirtillos farin. Hordei. an. fiat omnium pul. subtiliss. a sperge excoriationes post Balneum.*

#### CHAP. XXXI.

*Of the accidents which happen to the childes yard, either before or after his birth.*

**H**ere may happen seven accidents about the top and end of the childes yard, even from his birth : to wit, three in the *Præputium*, or foreskinne : and foure in the *Glans* or top thereof. Touching those of the *Præputium*, the first is, when it is so straight and the hole so little, that the Urine being come forth of the *Glans*, cannot passe thorow the skinne, but drop by drop, by reason it is shut so close together, which makes part of the Urine remaine betwixt the top of the yard and the *Præputium*. The second is, when the passage of the *Præputium* is not altogether so narrow, but yet it cannot bee put

Divers imperfections of the *Præputium*.

cannot be put backe neither can the *Glass* be uncovered, which the Ancients have called *Phimosis*. The Phimosis  
 third is when the *Preputium* cannot cover the *Glass* because it is slipped over, and drawne backward; called by the Ancients *Paraphimosis*.

Concerning these of the *Glass*: the first is, when there is no passage at all, in the end thereof: the second is, when there is a passage, but the hole is too little. The third is, when the hole is not in the place where it ought to be, which is at the end, but is placed at the bottome or lower part of the *Glass*. The fourth is, when the top of the yard bendeth downward and makes the yard stand crooked and awry.

*Paraphimosis*

*Aristotle* hath observed another kind more strange then those, where hee saith, that there have beene some male children, which naturally have had no passage made at the end of the yard, but the hole hath beene lower in the *Perineum*, so that they were constrained to pisse, as it were sitting, and when they held up their *Gods*, or *Scrotum*, they seemed to bee both man and woman.

An observation of *Aristotle*.  
*lib. 4. cap. 4. de generatione Animalium.*

I have heretofore, for all the other accidents above named advised the Nurse to have a care and looke to them: But because the cure of these belong properly to the Chirurgion to have set it downe more at large, and specified it more particularly in this place that they may the better helpe it, considering the inconveniences, that may follow, as we will shew you.

For the first, which is when the skin of the yard is so straight that the water cannot come forth,

What happens when the *Preputium* is closed.

# The Nursing

but drop by drop, this imperfection maketh a great  
 deal of filth to be gathered betwixt the *Preputium*  
 and the *Glans*, whereof proceedeth many trouble-  
 some and dangerous ulcers, yea, and sometimes a  
 Gangrene. I have observed it in some young chil-  
 dren; that the top of the yard hath become blacke  
 and blew with pissing, through the very paine they  
 endured.

The best way to remedy it, is to cut off the ve-  
 ry top and end of the *Preputium*, thereby to take  
 away a peece of it, as they doe in the Circumci-  
 sion. For the performance, whereof there be di-  
 verser wayes, but the safest, and least painfull way  
 is this:

First, it is to be considered, that the *Preputium*  
 is double, so that when one thinks to cut both the  
 skins, he cuts but one; for the second teeps away, es-  
 pecially from betwixt the Sizzers. Besides, in cut-  
 ting the unboth together, oftentimes you may cut  
 more of the uppermost skin, than of the nethermost  
 which is next to the *Glans*, which causeth into re-  
 maine bare and uncovered, whereof followeth  
 great paine; it being fitter (for that occasion) to cut  
 away lesse of the first than of the second.

Wherefore to prevent these accidents; the Chi-  
 rurgion with his right hand must slide backward  
 over the *Glans*, the outward skin or membrane of  
 the *Preputium*; and with the nailes of his other hand  
 hee must draw downward towards him the inner  
 beinne, which is next to the *Glans*; then some other  
 Chirurgion, or stenderby, with a paire of Pincers  
 made

The order of cutting the *Preputium*.

The manner of doing it.

anq...  
 ...  
 ...

made like unto those, shall take hold of both the membranes, so placed with the forks of the said Pincers, holding them very fast, pulling up with them, neither more nor lesse of the skinne than hee would have cut off, leaving the *Glans* or *Nut* behinde, and then with a very sharpe Razor hee must cut away all that is without the forks of the Pincers: when hee hath done so, let him loose his instrument, and let it bleed a little: by which meanes hee shall have both the membranes even: and not standing out one more than the other; onely the outward (it may bee) will a little come over, and cover the second. This being done, the wound must bee healed as an ordinary wound.

I have learned this manner of practise, of *Mons. de Mayerne*, the Kings Physician in Ordinary, who hath caused it to be done after this fashion: and it is the order and Method which the Jewes at this day doe observe in their circumcision: If you have not such an instrument, you may take two little flat peeces of wood, and tie them



both

## The Nursing

both together at one end, and then put the *Preputium* betwene them, as we have shew- ed, afterwards tying both the o- ther ends together reasonable hard, and then cut away so much of the *Preputium* as is without the wood, after the same man- ner as you see Smiths cut off the tops of horse eares.

This Method may be also ob- served, when the *Preputium* is too much enlarged, though it hinder not the urine from com- ming forth, which is common- ly done; for feare least it should slip oyes the *Glow* in such form, that it could; not come backe a- gaine, and lest it might cause a *Paraphimosis*; which is more dangerous than the *Phimosis*, and often happeneth to those that are somewhat bigge. Nevertheless we follow another course in cu- ring the *Phimosis*; more easily than the former, which is to fix the *Preputium* at the bottom: and we do it in this manner. First we stretch the *Preputium* of all sides, drawing it a little towards us, & then we slip in such an instru- ment as you see here, betwene



Another way  
of curing the  
*Phimosis*.



the *Glar* and the *Prapatium*, even to the string at the bottome of it, and there suddenly we divide all the *Prapatium* below, hard by the string, which I have done very often, and not long since for an honest Gentleman, *Mons. Riols*, the Chirurgeon being with me. For with such an instrument you shall cut asunder both the skinnes even, which you cannot doe so well with the Sizzers, because the upper membrane cannot be wholly cut that way, which hath deceived some, and my selfe also at the first; being constrained to goe to it againe the second time; which made me devise this instrument.

As for the *Paraphimosis* of little children, it is of two sorts: For the *Prapatium* being slipped up over the *Glar*, it either sticks and staves so; or else it is onely too short, and will easily be brought over it againe; and cover it, but not staying so, it goes backe againe strait: To that which doth cleave and sticke to it, it is not fit to doe anything by reason of the youngnesse of the childe: And for the other, which is onely too short, because it breeds no inconvenience, I would advise the Chirurgeon not to meddle with it, but rather to deferre the practise of it, till the childe be growne bigger, and be able to endure it; which shall be done in this sort.

You must first of all turne backe all the *Prapatium*, that you may the better come at the inner membrane, which you must hold very fast, & make an incision round about it, the which incision must goe no deeper than the said inner membrane: then letting it bleed well, you must make such another

The *Paraphimosis* of little children.

The *Anchor* opinion.

The Method of doing it.

incision round about the uppermost membrane, which must goe no deeper than to the nethermost: and presently as soon as you have made these two incisions, you must pull out the *Preputium* as long as which will easily stretch, because both the membranes, by reason of the foresaid incisions, will yeeld. Afterwards you must have a care that the said incisions grow not together againe, and that the innermost membrane be not glued, and sticks to the *Glass*, or top of the yard: which you may hinder by laying betwixt them fine little linnen rags, spread over with some ointment, which may serve also to heal the said incision.

Another way.

Some, after they have made these incisions, pull the *Preputium* quite over the *Glass*, and tie it reasonable hard, that the urine may have a passage, as also by this meane so keepe it from going backe againe, and then afterwards they untie it, when they would dress the inner incision.

Cornelius Celsus appointeth this kind of Cure.

Some doe onely pull over the *Preputium*, and tie it as we have shewed: when they make an incision round about the skin of the yard, neare unto the groine, being very carefull that they neither cut any veine that is in those parts, nor of going so deepe, as to the passage of the urine: When they have done thus, they draw the skin toward the ligature, and lay some lint in the incision, to dilate it, and breed some flesh therein. And it is to be observed, that the *Preputium* must bee alwayes tied at the end, otherwise it would turne backe againe, and the incision would grow together.

But

But, (as *Paulus Aeginetius* saith) since these two accidents of the *Preputium*, doe neither trouble them much, nor hurt any action: I would not counsel them to make the party suffer such paine, whether he bee young or old, nor to have him trie the torment of such experiments.

*Aeginetius*  
opinion.

When it happens that there is no passage at the end of the yard, then must the Chirurgion very cunningly make an hole there; that the urine may have free passage to come forth which being done, it must bee kept open, and skinned over with little ceasing candles put therein, which must bee bowled at the top, otherwise lest they should get whole into the bladder, which I have seen happen unto some. The said ceasing candle must bee gently rubd over with a little powder of Bole, and Fritia, and upon it shall be laid a little plaster of *Aphigerans Oculi*.

A good obser-  
vation.

If it chance, that the hole be not big enough, it must be widened with fine little ceasing candles, first to the passage, and made with medicines that are somewhat corrosive, thereby to fetch away the upper skin of the hole. Taking great heed, that the candle goe but a little way in, because the passage is narrow and strait onely at the end, the rest being commonly large enough. And when the hole is wide enough, it must be cicatrized with the like ceasing candles, as we have shewne already, observing the same method as before.

When the hole of the yard is at the bottome, and not at the end, which best ought to be naturally.

# The Nursing

If it may be done possibly, that the bottome of the *Glass* must bee stopped up, and another made in the end of it : For those that have the hole so low, cannot pisse straight, but downeward, or else they are constrained to hold up their yard toward their belly. And when they grow to bee men, their seed cannot be carryed straight, as it ought : which may be a meanes to hinder them from having children.

For the performance of the Cure, it will bee very needfull to excoriate the sides of the said passage, and to breed a little flesh there, and afterwards to confirme and skinne it : having first of all made another little hole at the end of the said *Glass*, which must be dressed and skinned with little ceasing candles, as we have shewne already.

Besides all the other accidents heretofore mentioned, I have seene the yard of some children so crooked, that when it rose and grew stiffe, the *Glass* or top of it was drawne, and bowed quite downeward, which made them, that they could not pisse straight. This fault proceedeth from the shortnesse of the string, which holds the *Glass* so straitely tyed that it cannot stretch it selfe forth when the yard growes stiffe.

The Cure.

As touching the Cure, both the Chirurgion and the Parents must bee content to let it alone for a while till the child be growne a little older, and bigger. And when they would put it in practice, they must watch their time to doe it, when the childs yard doth stand, and is stiffe : Then the Chirurgion

the region turning backe the *Preputium* shall uncover the *Gland* as gently as he can: and as hee finds the ligament or string to be too short, hee shall cut it in the middle, and presently bring the *Preputium* over it againe, that the *Gland* be not left bare: having first laid upon the incision a little chaw'd salt, as they doe to the string of the tongue, lest it should grow together againe, and then he shall lay a little Emplaister of *Refrigerans Galeni* round about the yard.

CHAP. XXXII.

*Of Wenches that have their naturall passage closed up, even from their birth.*

**T**Here be some Maids that are borne with their wombe quite shut up, or that have no naturall passage: which hapneth by means of some membrane that is placed in that part, which closeth and shutteth up the entrance. (for certainly there is none which naturally hath not a passage.) But because there is something found that stops up the entrance of it, therefore we say, that they have none at all. This membrane is not alwayes leayed in the same place, neither is it of the same forme and composition, nor of the same matter: For in some, it is placed in the very edge of the passage, and is easily perceived: and in others it lies deeper, neare unto the inner Orifice of the wombe.

Y y In

# The Navel

Difference in figure.

Some of the figure, some are pierced through the middle, others have holes like unto a Sieve, and some have none at all.

Matter.

Concerning the matter, some are membranous, and other sturty fleshy, but those which come even from the birth, are neither membranous, than fleshy children.

The Cure.

Those that trouble little children, are cured in this sort. First, see most diligently consider, and take good heed, whereabouts the membrane is seated or placed: for undoubtedly, the deeper it is, the more dangerous and difficult will be the Cure.

The order to doe it.

But when it is in the brain, and edges of the outward neck of the wombe, and is plainly seene, the Chirurgion (after he hath placed the child as is fit) shall cut a little the said membrane with his instrument directly in the middle, without going any farther. As soone as he hath made the incision, he shall lay upon it a little dry lint, that it come not together againe: and some dayes following, let him use some drying Ointment, which must be laid on with fine linnen clouts, as hath bin shewed before. To defer the cure of it till the child were growne older, it might prove more dangerous with the time, which hath bene well observed by *Aristotle*, where he saith:

*Aristot. lib 4. cap. 4. de generat. Animal.*

There are some Women, that have even from their birth, the necke of their wombe, as it were closed, and incorporated together which hath continued so with them till the time they should have their

their courses; but when they have bene ready, do  
 have them, with the very paine, in some the said  
 necke hath broken open of it selfe, in others it hath  
 bene opened by the Chirurgions, and when they  
 have bene constrained to open by force, so that  
 it could not be opened, these have many many dyed  
 of it. This accident hath happened unto divers, and  
 amongst others to an honest woman, being readi  
 dy to have her courses, fell very sick, her belly swel  
 led, with great prickings and stooings downward  
 and continual vomiting, that costled her, by the  
 keeping backe of the said courses, which could not  
 come away by reason of the membranes that stop  
 ped up the passage. Which was very hard, so bad  
 the Physicians and Chirurgions, that looked un  
 der, to find it out, who had appointed her divers  
 medicines to bring downe her courses: But when  
 they saw, that all their medicines did her no good,  
 they were of opinion to marry her, which was a  
 meane, that her husband found out her disease  
 sooner than any Phisitian could. I was sent for to  
 helpe her, but by reason of the badnesse, and danger  
 of the way in travails, Mess. de Fort, and M. Goffo  
 sworn Chirurgions of Paris, were sent thither, who  
 after they had perceived the disease, they cut the  
 said membrane, and made such an incision, that  
 there came out of it above hundred pound of conge  
 led and clotted blood, and a blacke corrupted pitch  
 which eased the patient very much. But whether it  
 were, that the incision was but halfe made, or that

DEUMSIC  
 11111111

to the A  
 - 11111

it had growne together againe; about a yeere after-ward *M. Plucar*, and I were called to finish the Cure, which wee did with very good successe after this manner.

The manner  
of doing it.

Having well considered the membrane (which was hard and glue, and had a hole in the middle of it, whereinto you might have put a large quill) wee were of opinion to enlarge it, by making three incisions; which was done with such an instrument as hath beene set downe before to cut the *Preputium*; and then presently we put in a Dilatory, such a one as they use to dilate the wound with, when they would take a stone out of the bladder; thereby to dilate and tear asunder the rest of the membrane, and to make the passage big enough for her to have the use of her husband; and alsoe as we had stretched it, we presently put into it a Pessary made of silver, of a convenient bignesse, which stayed there three dayes together; and was never taken forth, that the parts which had beene cut and torne asunder, might not grow together againe, as it had done before.

A pessary of  
Lead.

At the three daies end, the said pessary was taken forth, and others put in, made of linnen cloth, and covered with digestive, and suppurating medicines: And when the said ulcer was ready to heale, it was skinged with Pessarics of lead, applyed as they ought to be, and with others made of cloth, covered with clearing medicines. The said Gentlewoman was perfectly healed in three weekes.



CHAP. XXXIIL

Of the fundament that is closed and stopped.



**A**S the yard of a boy, and the naturall passage of a wench, are oftentimes found to bee closed and stopped up, when they come into the World: So in like manner there are some of both sexes, whose fundament is naturally closed and stopped also, which commeth thus to passe by meanes of a Membrane, which hinders this passage. Wherefore considering the accidents, yea & the danger of death which doth often attend it, it will be very needfull to remedy it speedily. For if the child be not quickly purged of a certaine matter, and excrement, called *Meconium*; which hee hath gathered together in his guts all the while he hath beene in his mothers wombe, he is in danger to have great and intollerable paines and gripings, and also to die in a short space: For the child cannot live except hee have the benefit of nature that way.

The fundament that is shut up must be speedily remedied.

The meanes to helpe it is this: The Chirurgion must first open the childs buttocks, and then let him consider, whether there be a hole in the fundament or whether it be stopped by some membrane. If he perceive, that the membrane is thinne *Paulus Aegineta* counselleth us to teare it. But if it bee rough and strong, the best way will bee for him to cut it

The Cure.

How the even  
Cure must be  
performed.

with a fine little instrument, and to goe as deepe as the very fundament: which hee may know by putting gently into the fundament, after hee hath made the incision, a little fine probe, with some lint at the end of it: or else a peece of ceasing Candle. Then the ulcer must be drest with little linnen tents, covered over with some drying medicine, which must be put into the fundament, least the brims and edges thereof, being raw and excoriated, should grow together againe. And it would not be amisse, to let the child take a gentle Clister, to helpe to unburthen him of the excrements that have bin retained. And since that the staying, or stopping of them, as I said before, is oftentimes cause of the childs death, it will not be from the matter to relate this story.

How the even  
Cure must be  
performed.

A story.

Not long since, the wife of *Mont de Cney*, M. Of the Munition in the Arcenall of *Paris*, was deliver'd of a little Daughter, which had the passage of her fundament shut up. After she was born, she was delivered unto the nurse to be carried into the country, where she continued seven or eight dayes without voiding any thing by stooles, which made her belly swell extremely. When upon she was brought unto this City, and *Mont Rabigois*, a Master Barber Chirurgion and Sworne at *Paris*, a very diligent and painfull man was sent for, to see what might be the cause of this swelling: and he inquiring whether the child went to stooles or no: it was answered him by the nurse, shee had never purged herselfe as yet that way, since she was borne: then by & by he searched the

the Fundament, and found it to be closed and stop-  
ped up, and therefore he did counsell the child's fa-  
ther to let him make an incision of the membrane  
that stopped up the passage; whereunto the father  
and mother would not consent till the morrow. But  
while the matter was debated and argued upon,  
the childe died: And she was opened by the said  
Master *Rabigois*, who found all her guts filled with  
the humour called *Meconium*, and other filthy  
matter.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of the scab which comes on the child's  
head and face.

**S**ometimes there cometh upon the  
child's head and face a hard crusty scab;  
which covereth all the head quite over,  
(and therefore it is called the Cap) and  
sometimes the face also: so that you can see no-  
thing but the child's eyes, as though hee had a  
maske on. The Latines call this scab *Lactamen*,  
or *Lactium*; as being an excrement of the MILKE.  
And because it is of a yellow colour like unto  
wax, it is also called *Cerium*. The cause hereof is  
two-fold, for either it is engendred of the residues  
of the women's courses or purgings: or else of the  
Nurses milke, which being of an ill quality, doth  
easily corrupt in the child's stomack, and cannot be  
turned into good iuyce, and much lesse bee cor-  
rected

*Lactamen.*

*Lactium.*

*Cerium.*

The Cause.

sted

cted by the Liver, it being sent thither to be turned into blood: which makes it, that being carried unto the head and face, it cannot be assimilated in those parts.

1. Lest this scab might corrode, and eat into the skinne, and afterwards the very bone of the head and face, and at length Gangrene the eyes: it will be very good to remedy it.

For which purpose the Nurse must keepe a good diet, as we have formerly shewed.

The Cure.

Concerning *Topicall*, or outward Medicines, you must have an especial care that you use none that doe repell and drive backe, but rather such as gently draw.

You may bath the crusts, especially those of the face, with gentle Fomentations made of *Mallows*, *Althea*, *Violet leaves*, *Chamomile*, and *Mellilot flowers*, and *Linseed*, boyled in milke: and with this decoction you may foment the crusts, and afterwards anoint them with Oile of sweet Almonds, fresh Butter well beaten with Parietary water, and Oile of Violets washed with Barley water.

I am wont to use an Ointment of *Lard* melted, and then well beaten and washed with Parietary water, and so anoint the crusts with it.

If there be any ulcer, and that the scabs are fallen off, you may lay upon it a Cabbage or a Beet leaf, a little heated on a Gridiron. The Ointment made of white Wax, and Oyle of sweet Almonds, is very good, when there is any rawnesse or excoriation.

CHAP. XXXV.

*Of The Meazels, and the Small Pockes, what they are, and how they doe differ.*



It remaineth now, that we speake of the meazells, and the small Pockes: and because there bee few children but have them either first or last, I have thought good, here to say a word or two of them briefly.

Few children escape the small pockes.

The meazell is and the pockes, are little risings or pustules, which appeare most commonly in great number, upon the outside of the skinne: and at the first, they are so like one another, that you can hardly discern whether of them it is. But yet the Meazells come more suddenly, and the face and skinne of the whole body, lookes redder: and the rednesse continueth longer without rising; there being joynd with it most commonly a greater itching and pricking. But the small pockes comes not forth so suddenly, neither is the skinne so red: nor doth the colour stay so long: the pustules or pimples rise higher, neither itching nor pricking so much, and at length grow white.

What the meazells and the pockes are.

Difference.

The cause of both of them, are the reliques of the impurer part of the blood, wherewith the child was nourished in his Mothers wombe; which now is separated and thrust to the skin, through the help and strength of nature, because the childs blood

Cause.

A good comparison.

boileth in the veines of every part of the body (as *Avicenna* saith:) No otherw<sup>e</sup> then new wine doth in a vessell, which boyleth, casting up his froth, or scum, and separating it from it selfe. And, (as *Aveszoar* saith) though the child be nourished, with the best part of the menstruall blood, yet there remaines some little portion behind, which is of a bad quality, and after the child is borne, and is growne strong, he gathering together his forces and naturall heat, thrusts it forth by the pores of the skin, nature being willing to acquite and rid her selfe of this superfluitie.

Besides, there is a certaine disposition of time, caused through the malignity of the aire, which raiseth and stirreth up the reliques of the said menstruall blood in the childs body, where with he hath bene nourished: unto which the corrupt aire (that we breath, and which we cannot avoide) doth adde an impression, of a second bad quality, wherewith nature being overcharged and offended, she thrusts them out to the skin, which receiveth the filth and uncleannesse of the body.

Now, the fuller the body is, of this menstruall blood, the deeper impression doth the outward aire make in it: which is the reason, that some have them in greater quantity, and are fuller of them, than others: And so according to the malignitie of the humour, it is also more, or lesse dangerous to some, than to others.

Signes.

The marks and signes, whereby you may know that the child will have the Pockes, are these:

Head-

Head-ach, together with an Ague, rednesse of the eyes, which water very often, itching of the nose, a dry Cough, gaping, wearinesse of the body, paine of the Head, desire to vomit, the urine red, pricking and shivering through all the body, and sometimes Convulsions and ravings. VVhen it is the Measles, the face growes red, and affecteth all at once: but when it is the Pox, neither the face, nor the rest of the body looke so red: but you may perceiue some little rashes here and there, in the face, backe, breast, and thighs; which afterwards increase, and grow bigger.

And when the Pox beginne to shew themselves, then there happens heavinesse of the head, the face swelleth, the eyes are sealed, all the body becomes as it were puffed up, the voice growes hoarse with difficulty of fetching breath, and forenesse of the throat: For it is the property of this vile disease to take hold of the Lungs; and yet we see oftner than we would, that the small Pox doe fall even upon the bones, and corrupt them.

To knowe of the Measles

The signes to judge of the event of them, are these: If the Ague be but little, and diminisheth as the Pox come forth: If they bee but few in number, and those scattered here and there: if they come forth easily, without much paine, and that the child is not much disquieted, if they grow white and ripen quickly: these are signes of recovery. But if the Ague continue, and increase at the coming forth of them, if they thrust forth in great quantity one upon another; and if they runne as it

Good signes.

Bad signes.

were all into one scab, not ripening speedily; if the childe be very hoarse, and not able to speake, or fall into a bloody flux, these are ill signes. The first sheweth, that it hath seized upon the Lungs: and the second, that it fretteth the guts.

Againe, the small Pox is very dangerous when it comes forth with paine and grieffe; though they be white. When they be small, greene, blewish, or blacke, and that they sinke downe and grow dry on the sudden, not coming to maturation and suppuration: if the childe pisse blond, and then by and by after his urine turnes to be blacke, it is signe of death.

The signes of the Measles.

Concerning the Measles, if they be but reasonable red, and have no ill accidents joyned with them, but goe away suddenly, they are not to be feared: But when they are high coloured, or if they be blewish, or greenish, accompanied with vomiting, paine of the heart, weaknesse, the bloody Flux, and the like, they are very dangerous.

*Of the cure of the Measles and small Pox.*



**N** all diseases that happen unto little Children, and especially in the cure of this present sicknesse, the Chirurzion must not be too hasty, nor doe any thing rashly: For there bee many oftentimes deceived, which thinke that the child will not have the Pox,

or



or Measels, because at the first they have but a little Ague, or Head-ach, or some other light signe of it: seeing that this disease lieth long in the body before it makes any shew.

And therefore, not without good cause have Hippocrates, the ancient Writers observed, that sometimes it is better to doe nothing, than to begin amisse, oftentimes altering thereby nature's course. Nevertheless, you cannot doe amisse in giving the child some little preservatives, as Unicorne's horn, Bezoards stone, and Cordiall waters, causing him to be kept quiet, without taking the aire, especially if it be cold weather.

But as soone as the Chirurgion perceiveth that the child is taken with an Ague, and that he hath the signes heretofore mentioned, he must proceed in this manner to the cure of them.

First, he must have a care in what place the child is laid, seeing that this disease doth partly proceed of a maligne and contagious aite, which after that it hath beene drawne and carried by the Lungs to the heart, and other parts of the body, in it leaveth there an impression of his bad quality, in that part of the menstruall bloud, wherewith the child was nourished in the mothers womb; wherefore let the child be kept in good aire, that is neither too hot nor too cold. For being too hot, it may cause the child to have faintings and swoonings; and being too cold, as the Pox or Measels are coming forth; it may

How the Pox must be helped.

The Cure.

The Place.

forth the impurities that are in the body. And therefore he must be kept warme in his bed, and reasonably well covered. Such as are more nice and curious, doe hang the bed round with red Coverlets. If it be winter, it will be good to have a fire in the chamber, to rectifie the aire, which perhaps is of the coldest; and also to correct some ill quality which it may have, as *Rhasis* and *Aviola* write. If it be in heat of Summer, it will not be needfull to make so much fire, nor to keepe the child covered so warme.

## His Diet.

go' to his wof  
the child's diet

Broths.

Concerning his meat and drinke, if the child sucke, then must the Nurse keepe a good diet, as we have here to fore prescribed; and as if shee herselfe had an Ague. If the child be weaned, he must abstaine from eating all manner of flesh, so not so much as of a little Chicken, till he Fox bee wholly come forth. But (as *Avicenna* saith) hee may use Broths, made with Capone or Chickens, wherein you must put good store of Sorrell, Cichory, Boglossie, Borage, and Lettice. Hee may also use the strained broth of Pease, Lentils, and Barley waters made with Figges, Dates, Raisins of the Sun also, Gelly Prunes, and roasted apples, well Sugred. For this Drink, let him use a Pritane, made of Barley and Licorice, adding therunto some Raisins of the Sonne, Figges, and Dates, but in small quantity. If that drinke please him not, then let him use this drinke following.

## His Drinke.

An excellent  
Drinke.

Take of French Barley a handfull, shavings of Ivory  
and Harts horne; tied in a little linnen cloth, of  
each

each two drammes. Boyle them in a quart of water, and when it is almost bodden, put to it halfe an ounce of Licorise, halfe a Citron peal'd and cut in slices: then straine it, and let him drinke of it w<sup>th</sup> his Meales, and when he is thirsty. When the Pockes are quite come forth, and begin to looke white, and that the Ague growes lesse and lesse, then hee may eate a little stonger meate, and drinke a little water and Wine: his meate and drinke must not be actually cold.

And because the pockes do come in the mouth, tongue, and throat, as also all along the wind-pipe you may put to his drinke, a little sugar, or sirup of Violets, Iulibes, or Cherries, and chiefly to that he drinketh betweene meales. This drinke lenieth & suppleth the roughnesse and exorations, is good for the Lungs, and the hoarsenesse wherewith they are troubled, and also it clenseth gently.

A lenifying and cooling Drinke.

For his sleepe, that must be moderate, if at the first he bee very drowle and heavy, hee must bee wakened, for feare least his head bee filled with vapors: But it is also fit, if he cannot take his rest, to give him somewhat to make him sleepe. For sleepe doth well conuert the humours, and maketh the Pockes come forth the better: And for this purpose you may give him some fine Barly waters, and put into his Broths some Lettuce, and the cold seeds, and at night you may give him a little spoonesfull of sirup of Iulibes, Nennifar and Violets, mingled together, abstaining from all Narcotick, or stupifying medicines.

His sleepe.

If

If he be bound, and cannot go to the stoole, you may give him inwardly a little Oile of sweete Almonds, newly drawne, or a little Hony, as *Avice* appointeth; which *Avenozar* allowes not of, because he had taken some of it, (as he saith) when hee had the Pockes, wherewith he thought hee should have dyed. It will not be amisse, to give him a spoonefull of *Cassia*; and if his belly be not loole, you may give him this gentle Clyster.

A Clyster.

Rx. *Sacchar. rub.* ℥s. *Ol. Violat.* ℥i. *Mel. Mercur.* ℥iij.  
*Decoct. Vituli, vel pulli* ℥v. *fiat enima, cum quo*  
*infundatur.*

Bloud letting.

Concerning bloud-letting, if the child be somewhat bigge; as of three or foure yeare old, or if hee be of a very sanguine complexion, and that the Ague be accompanied with unquietnesse, tossing to and fro; raving, difficulty of breathing, and inflammation of the eyes: I would advise you to draw a little bloud from him, which I have seene practized, (in the first daies of the sicknesse) by the best Physicians of this City. These and *Avice* command, that at the beginning we doe open the veine of the Nose: and they say moreover that many have very happily beene freed of this disease, by bleeding at the Nose; because the matter that breedeth the pockes, hath beene diminished thereby: and also it hindereth the violent ebullition of the bloud, that it ascends not in so great quantity, up into the head, and face, or keepe it from taking hold on any part, as the lungs or guts: So that nature being disburdened of part

of

of this humour, expelleth and throſteth out the reſt more eaſily.

The ſame Authours, for the bringing of them forth the ſooner, and with the leſſe paine, doe appoint that the childe ſhould take this drinke.

Re. *Caricar. ping. ʒj. Lentium excort. ʒs. Goss. Lacc. ʒij. Tragacanth. ſew. fenicul. an. ʒij. B. fiat decoct. in aqua font. ad lib. ij. percoletur. Colatura dulcoretur ſaccharo, vel ſyrupo Capill. Vener. & de hac in potu exhibeatur, ut etas conſentiet manè jejuo ſtomacho, & ſerò cubituro.* A Drink.

If the childe be ſo little that he cannot take this drinke, then the Nurſe muſt be carefull to drinke a good draught of it her ſelfe morning and evening.

Whileſt that this diet, is obſerved and the foreſaid Medicines uſed, you may give the childe ſome of this Cordiall Julep.

Re. *Aq. Cordial. an. ʒij. ſyrup. de Limonibus ʒj. wiſſe. utatur ſape.* A Cordiall Julep.

Besides he may take foure or five dayes together, the quantitie of foure or five graines of Bezoards ſtone, and as much Unicornes horne,

But becauſe for the moſt part this maligne humour ſeazeth upon the Eyes, Noſe, Eares, Throar, and Lungs, it will be very good to defend and ſortifie them, that they may bee as little offended as may be.

For the eyes, they take commonly a little Saffron mingled with Plantane, and Roſe-water, and there-with they rub the eye-lids round about. To preſerve the eyes.

Voices.

*Voices* appointeth the lids to bee washed with the juyce of a Pomegranate.

If there be a great inflammation and rednesse, then this Collyrium shall be applied to the eye.

A water for the eyes.

R. *Aq. Rosar. Plantag. Eufraf. an. ʒ ij. Album. ov. ʒ s. Troch. Albar. Rbas sine Opio ʒ j. Croci grana vj. Agitentur diu omnia simul, deinde coquantur per filtrum, de quo oculi sepius tangantur & illinantur.*

The Collyrium must be applied alwaies warme.

It will be also very good to put a little *Vnguentum Tutie*, into the corners and lids of the eyes.

To preserve the Nose.

That nothing may happen unto the Nose, you must use this Medicine.

An Eusthion.

R. *Aq. Rosar. Betonica, an. ʒ j. Aceti ʒ ʒ ʒ ʒ ʒ ʒ. succi Granator. ʒ vj. in quibus macerentur Santal. Citrin. subtiliter pul. ʒ ij. Croci gr. vj. fiat Er-rhinum.*

Eares.

You must cause the childe to smell often to this water, and sometimes put a litle of it into his nostrils: The like Medicine may be used to his Eares with a litle Cotton.

Mouth and Throat.

Let him use this *Gargarisme* to preserve his Mouth, Tongue and throat.

R. *Herb. integ. m. j. fol. Plantag. oxalid. Arnegloss. Agrimon. Verbena, an. m. ʒ. fiat decoct. an. ʒ vj. in quibus dissolve sirup. Granator. e Rosse siccis, an. ʒ ʒ. Croci ʒ j. Gargaris.*

The Lungs.

The Lungs must bee preserved with Medicines that do lenifie and supple the *Trachea arteria*; which may be done with sirrup of *Injubes*, *Nenuphar*, and *Violets*,

*Violets*: Also let him hold in his mouth *Suger Candy*, *Lozenges of Diatragacanthum frigidum*, and *Trochiscus bechici*.

Three or foure daies after the Pockes are come forth, you must rub the face with Oile of sweet Almonds, drawne without fire, to make them ripen the sooner, or else with this Liniment.

Take old Lard, and cut it into peeces, and melt it, when it is melted, straine it through a cloth, then wash and beat it well with water: and anoint the face with it.

When the pockes are come to maturation, and are ripe enough, which you may know by their whitenesse, as also when they feele them begin to itch (which happens commonly toward the eighth or ninth day,) that they may bee the sooner dried, and leave no marks or pits behinde them, the face must bee annointed with this medicine, which I have used, and found to have done much good.

Take two drammes of Chalke, and two ounces of thin Creame, mingle them well together, and herewith shall you rub all the face over with a feather, or else a linnen cloth ryed at the end of a sticke, for the space of two or three daies.

An approved  
medicaine.

This medicine doth kill and dry vp the Pustules, which will fall away of themselves, without pulling them off: and the skin underneath will be smooth, and even, without any dent or hollownesse.

Some doe only use the foresaid Ointment made with Lard, and continue it till the Pockes be wholly dried of themselves.

Aticens medi-  
cine.

Avicenna useth this medicine.

Rx *Eris. Herd. Faber. Lentium excorticat. an. ʒi.*  
*Thuris. Mirrh. Lithargir. an. ʒʒ. Lactis Nutricis q.*  
*sist limimentum satis liquidum, quo illudantur*  
*pustulae.*

And if there be any excoriation, you shall use this Oyntment.

Another Oint-  
ment.

Rx *Litharg. Auri. Cerus. an. ʒʒ. Myrrh. ʒʒ. Of Ma-*  
*stich. ʒi. ʒ. agitatur omnia simul in mortario, et*  
*fiat Limimentum.*

And for the beautifying and making the skinnē smooth, use the Oile drawne out of Pempion, or Citrull seeds, and of Pistaces, Oile of Egges maketh the skin looke yellow.

Fresh Butter-milke is excellent good, but you must warme it, that the little pieces of butter which stay behind, may be melted; and with this liquor must you wash or rub the face.

## CHAP. XXXVII.

*The means to preserve little children from  
the Measels, and the Pockes.*



He small Pockes and the Measels doe much annoy, and bring many inconveniences unto children: For daily experience sheweth us, that many die thereof, and those which escape, doe oftentimes beare the markes and badges of this vile disease. I have seene divers children, that have bene lame and may-



maimed, both of their armes, and legges, through the very malignity of the humour, that fell downe upon their tender ioynts and bones: Others have lost their eyes; or at the least there hath remained some pearle, or spot upon them: Others have had their eyes staring, red, or watering; Some have beene deafe, and dul of hearing: Others have had their nose and mouth shrunke together, or else puffed up; and some have beene hoarse afterwards all their life time: The least accident of all is, that many have remayned disfigured with pits and holes in their faces.

Divers accidents.

So that if they could be preserved from them it would both bee a great contentment to their Parents, and an ease to themselves. Now, as this disease is caused (as we have said) of the reliques of the menstruall blood: wherewith the child hath beene nourished, stirred up by the malignity of the aire (which it is impossible to shun or avoid:.) So to go about to preserve a child from it, we must doe two things; The first shall bee, to shun and avoid this corrupted Aire, and to resist it the best we can possibly: The second is, to evacuate and purge away the reliques of this humour, and to make them lesse hurtfull.

To preserve children from the Measels & small Pockes.

Wherefore both the Nurse and the child must live in a house, that stands in a good aire, far from any sinckes, privies, or Church-yards, from whence there arise many unwholsome vapours, & exhalations: Her chamber must have a good aire, rather standing high, then low: Let the window looke

# The Nursing

rather toward the North, or East, then to the South or West. If the weather be not too cold, let the casements stand open, to aire the chamber. If it be very cold, they must be shut, and you must make a good fire, burning some Iuniper, Rosemary, or Cypress, using also sometimes a little sweet perfume. If the chamber be too hot, you must strew it with Rushes, and a few Vine leaves, Violet leaves, Nenuphar, and Roses, sprinkling it with coole water, and a little Vineger.

The Nurser  
and the child's  
dyet.

The Nurse must keepe a good diet, such as wee have heretofore prescribed: she must drinke water a little coloured with wine; and if the childe be weaned, he must keepe the same kinde of diet: His meat must be seasoned with the juice of an Orenge, and you shall also put some iuice of Lemmons into his Broths, but you must parboyle it a little, that it hurt not his stomacke.

Their sleepe.

Both the Nurse and the child must sleepe moderately: she must not sleepe after dinner, unlesse she have not rested in the night, by reason her childe hath beene froward, who may sleepe a little in the day time, after dinner, if he be not weaned.

Purging.

The Nurse also and the child (if he be any thing big) may be gently purged with Cassia, Rubarbe, Senay, sirup of Cichory with Rubarbe; and sirup of Damaske Roses.

Letting blood.

If you perceiue that both their bodies be plethoricall, or full, it will be fit to draw a little blood: which must be understood, if the childe be three or foure yeeres old.

And

And concerning Medicines, either Generall, or Topically, I refer you to the former Chapter, which have as much power and vertue to preserve one from the disease, as to cure it after it is come.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

*Of the French Pox which hapneth unto children.*

**T**He French Pox may happen to a childe, either from his mothers wombe, or else by the Nurses fault; who may be defiled and infected with it.

The signes are like unto those which are observed in elder persons: but the most common are *Signes.* Pustules, Ulcers, and Excoriations, which appear chiefly about the childs buttocks and thighs.

As for the Cure, we must have a respect both to *The Cure.* the Nurse and the child. If the child hath taken it of the Nurse, shee must bee put away, and hee must have another: who must take such a diet as is commonly prescribed for those that are infected with this disease.

First, shee shall bee purged and let blood, shee must keepe a good diet, and eat rather boyled *Her diet.* meat than roasted, because the decoctions she must use, will dry her the better to breed sufficiently: as also milke to nourish the childe.

Let her drinke every morning of this or the like *The use of the decoction.* decoction, having a care to make it either weaker

## The Nursing

or stronger, according to her temper, and the time of the yeare : But before shee takes it, you must give her some of the Opiate following.

Both of them have power to make her milke Medicinall, and to hinder the child from imparting the disease unto her so soone, as otherwise he might doe, if she tooke no preservative.

### The Decoction.

*℞. Rasur. interior lign. sanct. ʒj. radic. sarsae Chinesae ʒj. B. lign. saffras ʒj. sem. Cardui Bened. ʒ ii. Triumflor. Cordial. an. m. j. rasur. Eboris. Cornu Cerui. an. ʒ. iij. Macerentur omnia in Panno Marie spatio xxxij. horar. in eq. fontan. lib. x. deinde fiat Colatura per manicam Hippocraticam, & dulcoretur sacchari albi lib. B. ad usum.*

### The Opiate.

*℞. Opiate Fernel. ʒ i B. Conf. Rosar. Boragin. Buglos. scorzoner. an. ʒ j. spec. Diamargarit. frigid. ʒ j. cum sirup. Conservation. Citri. fiat Optata. Capiat ʒ ij. ante decoctum, ut dictum est.*

She must first take the Opiate, and then drinke some of the decoction or infusion after it, and keep her bed, and sweat an houre or two without forcing her selfe.

After she hath sweat, she must not give her child sucke presently, but shee must rest and coole her selfe a little, and then give him the teat : But first she shall rub it with a little *Aqua Theriacalis*, to resist and hinder the infection.

If you cannot finde a Nurse that will venter to give the childe sucke, in stead thereof you shall  
cause

cause him to sucke a Goate; which I have caused some to do.

A Treacle water for the little child.

*Rc Theriac. veter. ℥i. Cons. Rosar. anthos. Borag. Buglos. an. ℥ii. Rasur. interior lign. Indi. ℥i. Rad. sarsapar. Chine an. ℥ss. Rad. sorsouer. ʒvi flor Cord. al. Calendul. Genist. an. m. ii. Aquam Cardui Benedict. Scabios. Borag. Buglos. Melisse an lib. 3. ponantur omnia in Alembico vitreo. postea macerentur spatio xxv. horar. deinde fiat distillatio. ut artis est.*

Let the child take a spoonfull of this water three times a day, in the morning, at noone, and at night, adding thereto a little Sugar Candy, or sirup of Limons. The Nurses may also take two ounces of it in the morning.

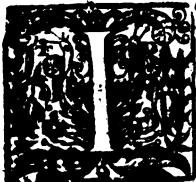
And because the true Antidote against this disease, is Quick-silver, therefore will it be very fit to anoint the childs pustules with some such Ointment, not bringing him to a flux of the mouth.

*Rc. Rng. Rosar. Mer. ʒ iij. Hydrargiri cum succo limonum extracti ʒi misce, fiat ungu. proliu.*

If the child bee elder, let him bee purged twice with a little *Sene*; and sirup of Cichory, with *Rubarb*, neither will it be amisse (if hee bee bigger and stronger) to open a veine, and take away a saucer full of blood, He may also use the foresaid decoction, and Opiate some eight or ten daies: only diminishing the doses of the Ingredients.

## CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the breeding and coming forth of Itches on  
childrens backs and raines, called in Lan-  
guedocke *Masqueton*, and of the  
Latines, *Morbus pilaris*.



I had bene more agreeable and convenient, to have set down this disease, in the Chapter of the Vomitiouse and crying of little children: But as this booke was even almost printed, *M. Tuguet*, a Barber Chirurgion of Paris, put me in mind of this disease, that happens unto little children, which is very common in Languedocke, and is called in their language *Masqueton*. Having inquired of divers physicians, about this disease, and among the rest, of *Messr. Biscan*, Doctor of Physicke in Paris, and the Kings professor in Chirurgery, a very learned and painefull gentleman, he told me, that *Morvianus* had written of it, and that he called it *Pilaris affectio*.

As soone as little Children are taken with this disease, they cry and take on exceedingly, and yet one cannot perceive any cause, why they should do so; which brings them oftentimes even to their grave, for that this disease drawes along with it Epilepticall convulsions; because the Sinewes whic

which come forth of the backe bone, and are scattered on each side; are overburdened, and filled with some fuliginous vapour, of which Haires are bred, and they by their great length, and continuallty, are carried directly to the braine; whither when they are come, they cause this disease.

The Women of the Countrey of *Languedocke*, because it is a common disease with them, make no great reckoning of it, and doe helpe it in this manner.

With the palme of their hand, they doe rub the bottom of the childs backe and reines downe to the crupper bone, so long, till they feele through the pores of the skinne, the tops of very stiffe and pricking haire to come forth, like unto Hogges bristles: which as soone as they see that they are come forth, they pull them away by and by with their nailes, or else with such little Pincers, as women use to pull the haire from off their eye-browes.

The same *Montanus* counselleth the woman to rub her hand first with some new Milke: which being done, and the haire pulled away, the childe presently recovers his health, and leaveth his ordinarie cries and laments.

There may also happen unto little Children divers other diseases besides these that I have spoken of: But because they bee common as others are, and such as may happen to one of any age: as

# The Nursing of Children.

Wounds, Ulcers, Impostumes, Fractures, Luxations, and forecote of the head, we have willingly omitted them for brevity sake : And also for that you may have recourse to those that have written thereof more particularly in their Chirurgery.

**FINIS.**







53964

271318

Digitized by Google

